

State Building

Construction Code

applicable to

Multiple Dwellings

1980

1980

"B"

code

FOREWORD

The State Building Construction Code and amendments thereto are promulgated by the State Building Code Council pursuant to Article 18 of the Executive Law. This Code, applicable to multiple dwellings, is also promulgated by the State Building Code Council pursuant to the authority of Article 18-B of the Executive Law of the State of New York.

The regulations in the several portions of the Code are identified by a letter prefix before the number of each section:

One- and Two-Family Dwellings	—A
Multiple Dwellings	—B
General Building Construction	—C
Plumbing	—P

The portion applicable to Multiple Dwellings effective December 1, 1964, was amended January 1, 1971 by adding provisions for the physically handicapped, and amended and reprinted January 1, 1973. Since that time it has been further amended September 15, 1973, June 24, 1974, September 1, 1976, April 1, 1977, April 1, 1979 and April 1, 1980.

This printing, dated April 30, 1980, includes all the amendments which became effective since January 1, 1973.

The year mark which appears in the left margin above the section number, indicates the effective date of the amendment for the section.

The year mark which appears to the left of a sub-section, indicates the effective date for the sub-section.

The key for the effective dates of amendments to the Code since January 1, 1973 is as follows:

¹⁹⁷³	effective September 15, 1973
¹⁹⁷⁴	effective June 24, 1974
¹⁹⁷⁶	effective September 1, 1976
¹⁹⁷⁷	effective April 1, 1977
¹⁹⁷⁹	effective April 1, 1979
¹⁹⁸⁰	effective April 1, 1980

The official version of the Code for legal purposes is found in Volume 9 Executive (B) of the "Official Compilation of Codes, Rules and Regulations of the State of New York" published by the Secretary of State and designated 9 NYCRR for citation.

The numbers in parentheses refer to numbering used in Volume 9 of the "Official Compilation of Codes, Rules and Regulations of the State of New York."

The State Building Code Council is concerned with regulations for the construction of buildings and the installation therein of equipment that is

essential to building operation and maintenance, such as plumbing, heating, electrical, ventilation and fire-protection equipment. The purpose of its regulations is to encourage the standardization of construction practices, equipment and material and eliminate restrictive, obsolete and conflicting building regulations which unnecessarily increase costs, retard use of new materials or provide unwarranted preferential treatment to materials, products or methods of construction; and to establish reasonable safeguards for the safety, health and welfare of the occupants and users of buildings.

The facilities for code drafting and for technical research which have been established under the provisions of the law enable the Council to provide an up-to-date code for the benefit of the municipalities of the State. It acts as a central clearinghouse, investigating detailed data on materials, methods and equipment. It has established a procedure for acceptance of new materials and new construction methods, and makes its findings available to the municipalities. Such data are invaluable to municipalities, and especially to local building officials charged with building code administration and enforcement.

The administration and enforcement of the Code are the responsibility of the local municipality pursuant to its own administrative ordinance.

Zoning, which regulates the use of land and buildings, remains the prerogative of the municipalities.

The municipalities of the State have the option to accept or not to accept the applicability of the State Building Construction Code. Those municipalities which have already accepted the applicability of the Code obtain without further action the protection afforded by these amended regulations.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Part 1

General Provisions

	Code Section	NYCRR Section	Page
Title	B 101	700.1	1
Purpose	B 102	700.2	1
Effective Date	B 103	700.3	1
Partial Invalidity	B 104	700.4	1
Scope	B 105	701	1
Quality of Materials	B 106	702.1	4
Acceptability	B 107	702.2	4
Abbreviations and Definitions	B 108	703	4
Safety During Construction	B 109	704.1	17
Safety During Demolition	B 110	704.2	17
Energy Conservation	B 111	705	18

Part 2

Space Requirements

General Requirements	B 201	710	19
Classification of Buildings	B 202	711	19
Height, Fire Area, and Type of Construction	B 203	712	22
Yards and Courts	B 204	713	28
Space	B 205	714	30
Habitable Space	B 206	715	31
Occupied Space and Public Space	B 207	716	32
Nonhabitable Space	B 208	717	32
Light and Ventilation	B 209	718	34
Access and Vertical Travel Between Stories	B 210	719	36
Exits	B 211	720	37
Garages and Open Parking Structures on the Same Premises With a Multiple Dwelling	B 212	721	54
Projection Beyond the Street Line	B 213	722	56
Facilities for the Physically Handicapped	B 214	723	56

Part 3

Structural Requirements

	Code Section	NYCRR Section	Page
General Requirements	B 301	730	65
Soil Bearing Value	B 302	731	65
Allowable Stresses of Materials	B 303	732	68
Design Loads	B 304	733	69
Analysis and Test of Structural Assemblies	B 305	734	77
Performance Criteria Under Test	B 306	735	77
Exterior Protection	B 307	736	79
Protection from Destructive Insects	B 308	737	80
Materials Requirements	B 309	738	80

Part 4

Fire-Safety Requirements

Prevention of Exterior Fire Spread	B 401	745	81
Prevention of Interior Fire Spread	B 402	746	89
Interior Finishes, Trims and Decorative Materials	B 403	747	102
Plastic Materials	B 404	748	105
Fireplaces	B 405	749	106
Fire Protection Equipment	B 406	750	107

Part 5

Equipment Requirements

General Requirements for Equipment ..	B 501	755	111
Plumbing	B 502	756	112
Gas Gas Piping Equipment and Systems	B 503	757	119
Heating	B 504	758	121
Chimneys, Flues, and Gasvents	B 505	758	126
Incinerators and Refuse Chutes	B 506	760	129
Electrical Wiring and Equipment	B 507	761	130
Refrigeration, Air Conditioning and Mechanical Ventilation	B 508	762	133

	Code Section	NYCRR Section	Page
Equipment for Fuel Oil	B 509	763	139
Fire Protection Equipment	B 510	764	140
Elevators, Dumbwaiters, and Escalators	B 511	765	151
Instructional Signs for Use of Exits	B 512	766.1	159

Appendix

Guide for Metrification	160
Index	161

TABLES

Minimum Fire-Resistance Requirements of Structural Elements	B 202-2	I-711	21
Maximum Height and Fire Area for Group B1 and B3 Occupancy	B 203-1a	I-712	24
Maximum Height and Fire Area for Group B2 Occupancy	B 203-1b	II-712	25
Maximum Height and Fire Area for Separate Garage Buildings Upon the Premises of Multiple Dwellings	B 203-1.1a	III-712	26
Maximum Height and Fire Area for Open Parking Structures Upon the Premises of Multiple Dwellings	B 203-1.1b	IV-712	27
Minimum Openable Areas for Natural Ventilation	B 209-5	I-718	36
Dimension Requirements for Exit Stairs, Handrails, and Guardrails	B 211-3	I-720	42
Minimum Width of Exit Doors	B 211-4.1	II-720	47
Maximum Distance of Travel to Exits	B 211-6	III-720	50
Floor Area Per Person	B 211-7a	IV-720	52
Capacity of Stairways and Doors	B 211-7b	V-720	52
Buildings That Require Facilities for the Physically Handicapped	B 214-1a	I-723	57
Number of Dwelling Units and Sleeping Rooms That Require Facilities for the Physically Handicapped	B 214-1b	II-723	57
Required Number of Toilet and Bath Facilities	B 214-5.2	III-723	61
Uniformly Distributed and Concentrated Live Loads	B 304-2.2	I-733	71

Snow Loads	B 304-3	II-733	72
Wind Loads:			
Walls, Eaves, Cornices, Towers, Masts, and Chimneys	B 304-4a	III-733	73
Roofs	B 304-4b	IV-733	74
Minimum Distance Separations	B 401-3.2	I-745	83
Parapet Walls	B 401-7	II-745	88
Minimum Fire Separations Required			
Between Occupancies	B 402-4	I-746	93
Opening Protectives for Interior			
Wall Openings	B 402-4.8	II-746	100
Interior Finish in Multiple Dwellings	B 403-3	I-747	103
Minimum Temperature Requirements	B 504-1	I-757	122
Location of Outlets	B 505-5	I-759	128
Locations Where Emergency Lighting is Required	B 507	I-761	132
Permissible Maximum Capacity of Fuel Oil Storage Tanks Inside of Buildings	B 509-3c	I-763	140
Buildings That Require Passenger Elevators	B 511	I-765	152

Part 1

General Provisions

B 101
(700.1)

TITLE

These regulations, promulgated pursuant to Article 18 of the Executive Law of the State of New York, shall be known as the State Building Construction Code applicable to multiple dwellings. They are hereinafter referred to as this Code.

B 102
(700.2)

PURPOSE

The purpose of this Code is to provide basic and uniform regulations in terms of performance objectives, establishing reasonable safeguards for the safety, health, and welfare of the occupants and users of multiple dwellings and their accessory structures, and making adequate performance the test of acceptability.

1980

B 103
(700.3)

EFFECTIVE DATE

This Code was first promulgated on December 15, 1953. Sections of this Code were amended as of March 31, 1958, December 1, 1964 and January 1, 1971. There was a general revision of this Code, resulting in numerous changes, effective January 1, 1973. Since then, sections of this Code have been amended effective September 15, 1973, June 24, 1974, September 1, 1976, April 1, 1977, April 1, 1979 and April 1, 1980.

B 104
(700.4)

PARTIAL INVALIDITY

If any term, part, provision, section, subdivision or paragraph of this Code shall be held unconstitutional, invalid, or ineffective, in whole or part, such determination shall not be deemed to invalidate the remaining terms, parts, provisions, sections, subdivisions and paragraphs thereof.

B 105
(701)

SCOPE

B 105-1
(701.1)

New Buildings

a—This Code shall apply to multiple dwellings including their accessory structures and parts thereof, and to buildings

General Provisions

containing mixed occupancies in which the residential occupancy is a multiple dwelling as defined in this Code.

b—Multiple dwellings containing not more than two dwelling units within walls conforming to the requirements of sections B 401-8.1 and B 401-8.2 shall be regulated as a one- or two-family dwelling and not pursuant to this Code.

B 105-2 (701.2) Existing Buildings

B 105-2.1 (701.2a) General

This Code shall also apply to existing buildings described in this section as if hereafter erected.

a—A building hereafter occupied as a multiple dwelling, which building was not so occupied when this Code became applicable to the municipality in which the building is situated.

b—A building moved into, or moved within, municipal limits subject to this Code, which is to be occupied as a multiple dwelling.

c—A building occupied as a multiple dwelling which is altered or repaired, when the cost of such alterations or repairs within any six-month period exceeds 50 per cent of the cost of replacement of the building at the beginning of that six-month period.

¹⁹⁷⁹ d—A building whose occupancy or use is changed to one of the following: apartment house or apartment hotel, hotel, lodging house, club, dormitory, garden apartment, motel, old age home, nursing home, building for senior citizens, and community residence.

B 105-2.2 (701.2b) Roof Covering

Whenever more than 25 per cent of the roof covering of a building is replaced in any six-month period, all roof covering on such building shall be made to comply with applicable regulations of this Code.

B 105-2.3 (701.2c) Addition or Alteration

Any addition or alteration made to a building shall be made in conformity with applicable regulations of this Code.

B 105-2.4 (701.2d) Existing Uses Continued

Except as otherwise herein provided, nothing in this Code

General Provisions

shall require removal, alteration, or abandonment of, nor prevent continued occupancy or use of, an existing building.

B 105-3 (701.3)

Mixed Occupancy

A building which is occupied in part for residential use, and in part for some other use not accessory thereto, shall be deemed to be a building of mixed occupancy, and, except for the separation requirements as set forth in section B 402-4.1, the occupancy other than residential is not regulated by this Code.

B 105-4 (701.4)

Maintenance

Buildings subject to this Code shall be maintained in a safe and sanitary condition in conformity with the provisions of this Code.

B 105-5 (701.5)

Zoning

No provision of this Code shall be construed to repeal, modify, or constitute an alternative to any lawful zoning regulation.

B 105-6 (701.6)

Prohibited Uses

Offensive, obnoxious, or hazardous occupancy shall not be permitted on the premises of a multiple dwelling; such prohibited uses include, but are not limited to, business, trade, industry, or purpose which is noxious or offensive by reason of the emission of odors, dust, smoke, gas, or noise, or in which flammable or explosive materials are involved except as may be incidental to the customary use of a multiple dwelling.

B 105-7 (701.7)

Fallout Shelters

This Code shall not apply to fallout shelters intended for emergency use where such fallout shelters are constructed or installed or proposed to be constructed or installed to provide safety and security to the occupants in accordance with approved specifications, standards, or regulations.

B 105-8 (701.8)

Workmanship

Workmanship shall conform to generally accepted good practice in the applicable trade.

General Provisions

B 106 **QUALITY OF MATERIALS**

(702.1)

All materials, assemblies, construction, and equipment shall conform to the regulations of this Code, and shall conform to generally accepted standards with respect to strength, durability, corrosion resistance, fire resistance, and other qualities recognized under those standards. All test specimens and construction shall be truly representative of the material, workmanship, and details to be used in actual practice.

B 107 **ACCEPTABILITY**

(702.2)

a—Compliance with applicable provisions of generally accepted standards, except as otherwise prescribed in this Code, shall constitute compliance with this Code.

b—Deviations from applicable provisions of generally accepted standards, when it shall have been conclusively proved that such deviations meet the performance requirements of this Code, shall constitute compliance with the Code.

B 108 **ABBREVIATIONS AND DEFINITIONS**

(703)

B 108-1 **General**

(703.1)

a—Abbreviations, terms, phrases, words, and their derivatives used in this Code shall have the meanings given in this section.

b—Words used in the singular include the plural, and the plural the singular. Words used in the masculine gender include the feminine and neuter genders.

B 108-2 **Abbreviations**

(703.2)

- BTU** British thermal unit
- C.** Centigrade
- c** Combustible
- cfm** Cubic feet per minute
- F.** Fahrenheit
- ft** Foot or feet
- gal** Gallon or gallons
- gpm** Gallons per minute
- in.** Inch or inches
- max** Maximum

General Provisions

min	Minimum
nc	Noncombustible
np	Not permitted
p	Permitted
psf	Pounds per square foot
psi	Pounds per square inch
un	Unlimited

B 108-3 (703.3)

Definitions

accessory structure. A structure, the use of which is incidental to that of the main building, and which is attached thereto, or is located on the same premises.

accessory use. A use, occupancy or tenancy customarily incidental to the principal use or occupancy of a building. (In a multiple dwelling, such accessory uses may include, among others, the following: a—offices for the building management; b—dining rooms, banquet rooms, public kitchens, and ballrooms; c—recreation and play rooms; d—laundries for the use of tenants and occupants, and in connection with the management and operation of the multiple dwelling; e—maintenance and work shops, storage rooms for linen, bedding, furniture, supplies, and tenants' equipment and effects; f—rooms or space for the incidental sale or display of merchandise to occupants and tenants, such as newspaper, candy, and cigar stands; g—garages within the multiple dwelling or on the premises thereof used primarily for the storage of passenger-type motor vehicles.)

addition. Extension or increase in area, height or equipment of a building.

alley. Narrow supplementary thoroughfare for the public use of vehicles or pedestrians, affording access to abutting property.

alteration. Any change, rearrangement, or addition to a building, other than repairs; any modification in construction or in building equipment.

apartment. A dwelling unit.

apartment, garden. A multiple dwelling or group of multiple dwellings containing dwelling units, occupying not more than 35 per cent of the area of the site or plot on which such dwelling or dwellings are situated.

apartment hotel. A multiple dwelling in which dwelling units are leased to permanent and, or transient tenants.

General Provisions

apartment house. A multiple dwelling in which dwelling units are leased to permanent tenants.

approved. Approved by the enforcement officer under the regulations of this Code, or approved by an authority designated by law or this Code, or acceptable in accordance with the condition set forth in section B 107.

assembly space. A room or space where more than ninety-nine persons congregate or gather for amusement, athletic, civic, dining, educational, entertainment, patriotic, political, recreational, religious, social, sports, or similar purposes.

attic. Space between the top of uppermost floor construction and underside of roof.

basement. That space of a building that is partly below grade which has more than half of its height, measured from floor to ceiling, above the average established curb level or finished grade of the ground adjoining the building.

bathroom. Enclosed space containing one or more bathtubs or showers, or both, and which may also contain water closets, lavatories, or fixtures serving similar purposes. See definition of **toilet room**.

building. A structure wholly or partially enclosed within exterior walls, or within exterior and party walls, and a roof, affording shelter to persons, animals, or property.

building line. Line established by law, ordinance, or regulation, beyond which no part of a building, other than parts expressly permitted, shall extend.

cellar. That space of a building that is partly or entirely below grade, which has more than half of its height, measured from floor to ceiling, below the average established curb level or finished grade of the ground adjoining the building.

combustible. Material or combination of materials which is not noncombustible. See definition of **noncombustible**.

¹⁹⁷⁹ **community residence.** A facility for mentally disabled as defined by the Mental Hygiene Law and the rules and regulations issued under this law.

construction classification. A classification of buildings into types of construction which is based on the fire resistance of the walls, floors, roof and other structural members. (See section B 202-2 and table B 202-2).

—**type 1, fire-resistive construction.** That type of construction in which the walls, partitions, columns, floors and roof are noncombustible with sufficient fire resistance to

General Provisions

withstand the effects of a fire and prevent its spread from story to story. See B 402-1e.

— **type 2, noncombustible construction.** That type of construction in which the walls, partitions, columns, floors and roof are noncombustible and have less fire resistance than required for fire-resistive construction. See B 402-1e.

— **type 3, heavy timber construction.** That type of construction in which the exterior walls are of masonry or other noncombustible materials having equivalent structural stability under fire conditions and a fire-resistance rating of not less than 2 hours; the interior structural members including columns, beams and girders, are of heavy timber, in heavy solid or laminated masses, but with no sharp corners or projections or concealed or inaccessible spaces; the floors and roofs are of heavy plank or laminated wood construction, or of any other material providing equivalent fire-resistance and structural properties; or construction is as set forth in the generally accepted standards.

— **type 4, ordinary construction.** That type of construction in which the exterior walls are of masonry or other noncombustible materials having equivalent structural stability under fire conditions and a fire-resistance rating of not less than 2 hours, the interior structural members being wholly or partly of wood of smaller dimensions than those required for heavy timber construction.

— **type 5, frame construction.** That type of construction in which the walls, partitions, floors and roof are wholly or partly of wood or other combustible material.

construction, fireproof. Type 1 fire-resistive construction.

convalescent home. A building used for the accommodation and care of persons recuperating from illness.

corridor. Passageway or hallway which provides a common way of travel to an exit or to another passageway leading to an exit. See definition of **exit**.

court, inner. An open, uncovered, unoccupied space surrounded on all sides by the exterior walls of a building or structure or by such walls and an interior lot line of the same premises.

court, inner, width. Least horizontal dimension.

court, inner, depth. Least horizontal dimension measured perpendicular to the width.

General Provisions

court, outer. An open, uncovered, unoccupied space which has at least one side opening on a legal open space.

court, outer, width. Least horizontal dimension measured across the open end of the court.

court, outer, depth. Least horizontal dimension measured perpendicular to the width.

curb level. The elevation of the curb established by the municipal authority. See section B 203-1h.

distance separation. An open space between buildings or between a building and an interior lot line, provided to prevent the spread of fire.

dwelling unit. One or more rooms with provision for living, cooking, sanitary, and sleeping facilities arranged for the use of one family.

enforcement officer. A person lawfully empowered to enforce the regulations of this Code.

exit. That portion of the way of departure from the interior of a building or structure to the exterior at street, or grade level accessible to a street, consisting of:

- a—corridors, stairways and lobbies enclosed in construction having a fire-resistance rating, including the door opening thereto from a habitable, public or occupied space; or
- b—an interior stairway; or
- c—a horizontal exit; or
- d—a door to the exterior at grade; or
- e—an exterior stairway, or ramp.

fallout shelter. A building, structure or other real property, or an area or portion thereof, constructed, altered or improved to afford protection against harmful radiation resulting from radioactive fallout, including such plumbing, heating, electrical, ventilating, conditioning, filtrating and refrigeration equipment and other mechanical additions or installations, if any, as may be an integral part thereof.

family. A household constituting a single housekeeping unit occupied by one or more persons.

fire alarm system. An approved installation of equipment for sounding a fire alarm.

fire- and smoke-detecting system. An approved installation of equipment which automatically actuates a fire alarm when

General Provisions

the detecting element is exposed to fire, smoke or abnormal rise in temperature.

fire area. The floor area of a story of a building within exterior walls, party walls, fire walls, or any combination thereof.

fire damper. An approved automatic or self-closing noncombustible barrier designed to prevent the passage of air, gases, smoke or fire through an opening, duct or plenum chamber.

fire hazard classification. A classification of occupancy or use of a building based on the fire load or danger of explosion therein.

fire limits. Boundary line establishing an area in which there exists, or is likely to exist, a fire hazard requiring special fire protection.

fireproof. Fire resistive.

fire protection equipment. Apparatus, assemblies or systems either portable or fixed, for use to prevent, detect, control, or extinguish fire.

fire resistance. That property of materials construction or assembly of materials which under fire conditions prevents or retards the passage of excessive heat, hot gases, or flames.

fire-resistance ratings. Time in hours or parts thereof that material, construction, or assembly will withstand fire exposure, as determined in a fire test made in conformity with generally accepted standards, or as determined by extension or interpretation of information derived therefrom.

fire resistive. The quality of materials, assemblies, constructions, or structures to resist fire and prevent its spread; fireproof.

fire retardant wood. Wood that has been treated by an approved pressure impregnation process with fire-retardant chemicals in accordance with generally accepted standards, and is legibly marked as to its performance characteristics. When used as a structural element or as furring, flame-spread rating shall be no greater than 25 with no evidence of progressive combustion, and test shall be for at least 30 minutes. When used as interior finish or trim, flame-spread rating shall be in conformity with section B 403-2, and test shall be for at least 10 minutes.

fire separation. A construction of specific fire resistance separating parts of a building.

firestopping. A barrier effective against the spread of flames or hot gases within or between concealed spaces.

General Provisions

fire terrace. A level space or area at a setback of an exterior wall of a building and at approximately the same elevation as that of the curb or grade level of the higher street, to provide a safe termination from upper stories of the building.

flame-resistant material. Material which is flame resistant by nature or has been made flame resistant in conformity with generally accepted standards.

flame spread. The propagation of flame over a surface.

flame-spread rating. The measurement of flame spread on the surface of materials or their assemblies as determined by tests conducted in conformity with a generally accepted standard.

flammable. Capable of igniting within 5 seconds when exposed to flame and continuing to burn.

floor area. The floor area within surrounding walls of a building, or portion thereof.

flue. Enclosed passage, primarily vertical, suitable for removal to the outer air of gaseous products of combustion.

gasvent. Enclosed passage used for removal to the outer air of products of combustion from gas-fired equipment only.

generally accepted standard. A specification, code, rule, guide or procedure in the field of construction or related thereto, recognized and accepted as authoritative.

grade, finished. Natural surface of the ground, or surface of ground after completion of any change in contour.

habitable space. Space occupied by one or more persons for living, sleeping, eating, or cooking. Kitchenettes shall not be deemed to be habitable space. See definitions of **nonhabitable space, public space, and exit.**

hallway. An enclosed passageway leading to a stairway or other required exit, which provides common access to rooms or exitways in the same story in a building.

¹⁹⁷⁶ **heat-detecting alarm system.** A system comprised of a heat detector, a remote alarm and a remote light indicator, which upon detection of abnormally high temperature, activates the alarm and the light indicator.

heater room. Space containing central heat producing or heat transfer equipment.

— **high capacity.** Containing equipment having an individual or combined rated gross capacity of 1,000,000

General Provisions

Btu per hour or more, or capable of operating at more than 15 psi for steam or more than 30 psi or 250°F. for hot water.

—**moderate capacity.** Containing equipment having an individual or combined rated gross capacity from 250,000 to 1,000,000 Btu per hour, and operating at less than 15 psi for steam or less than 30 psi or 250°F. for hot water.

—**low capacity.** Containing equipment having a rated gross capacity of less than 250,000 Btu per hour, and operating at less than 15 psi for steam or less than 30 psi or 250°F. for hot water.

height, building. The height of a building is expressed in both feet and stories. See sections B 203-1h and B 203-1i.

hereafter. After the effective date of the acceptance by the municipality of the applicability of the State Building Construction Code.

¹⁹⁸⁰ **historic buildings.** Historic buildings are buildings which have been specifically designated as historically significant by the State or local governing body, or listed in "The National Register of Historic Places" or which have been determined to be eligible for listing on the National Register by the Secretary of the Interior.

hoistway. Vertical opening, space, or shaftway in which an elevator or dumbwaiter is installed.

horizontal exit. Protected opening through or around a fire wall, connecting two adjacent floor areas, each of which furnishes an area of refuge, and from each of which required exits lead to legal open spaces.

hotel. A multiple dwelling used primarily for the purpose of furnishing lodging and meals to transient guests, for compensation.

interior finish. Material applied directly to walls or ceilings for acoustical correction, surface insulation, decorative treatment, or similar purposes, including but not limited to veneer, wainscotting and paneling. Surface finishes of wallpaper or other materials not more than 1/28-inch thick having no greater fire hazard than wallpaper, shall not be deemed to be interior finish.

interior trim. Material generally not exceeding 12 inches in width, around openings or on wall or ceiling; including cas-

General Provisions

Btu per hour or more, or capable of operating at more than 15 psi for steam or more than 30 psi or 250°F. for hot water.

—**moderate capacity.** Containing equipment having an individual or combined rated gross capacity from 250,000 to 1,000,000 Btu per hour, and operating at less than 15 psi for steam or less than 30 psi or 250°F. for hot water.

—**low capacity.** Containing equipment having a rated gross capacity of less than 250,000 Btu per hour, and operating at less than 15 psi for steam or less than 30 psi or 250°F. for hot water.

height, building. The height of a building is expressed in both feet and stories. See sections B 203-1h and B 203-1i.

hereafter. After the effective date of the acceptance by the municipality of the applicability of the State Building Construction Code.

¹⁹⁸⁰ **historic buildings.** Historic buildings are buildings which have been specifically designated as historically significant by the State or local governing body, or listed in "The National Register of Historic Places" or which have been determined to be eligible for listing on the National Register by the Secretary of the Interior.

hoistway. Vertical opening, space, or shaftway in which an elevator or dumbwaiter is installed.

horizontal exit. Protected opening through or around a fire wall, connecting two adjacent floor areas, each of which furnishes an area of refuge, and from each of which required exits lead to legal open spaces.

hotel. A multiple dwelling used primarily for the purpose of furnishing lodging, with or without meals, to more than fifteen transient guests, for compensation.

← 1983?

interior finish. Material applied directly to walls or ceilings for acoustical correction, surface insulation, decorative treatment, or similar purposes, including but not limited to veneer, wainscotting and paneling. Surface finishes of wallpaper or other materials not more than 1/28-inch thick having no greater fire hazard than wallpaper, shall not be deemed to be interior finish.

interior trim. Material generally not exceeding 12 inches in width, around openings or on wall or ceiling; including cas-

General Provisions

ings, stools, aprons, baseboards, chair rails, picture molds, cornice moldings, and moldings applied for decoration.

kitchen. Space, 60 square feet or more in floor area, used for cooking or preparation of food.

kitchenette. Space, less than 60 square feet in floor area, used for cooking or preparation of food.

legal open space. Open space on the premises, such as yards or courts, or an open space at least 25 feet wide permanently dedicated to public use which abuts the premises.

load, dead. Weight of all permanent construction, including walls, framing, floors, roofs, partitions, stairways, and fixed building-service equipment.

load, design. Total load which a structure is designed to sustain.

load, imposed. All loads, exclusive of dead load, that a structure is to sustain.

load, live. Load imposed solely by the occupancy.

load, racking. Load applied in the plane of an assembly in such manner as to lengthen one diagonal and shorten the other.

lobby. A public lounge or waiting place adjacent to and connected with other spaces and a passageway which serves as a principal entrance or exit.

lodger. A transient, temporary, or permanent paying guest.

lodging house. A multiple dwelling used primarily for the purpose of furnishing lodging, with or without meals, for compensation.

lot line. Line dividing one premises from another, or from a street or other public space.

luminous ceiling. Light-transmitting panels suspended below light sources and supported from the construction above.

masonry. A construction of units of such materials as clay, shale, concrete, glass, gypsum, or stone, set in mortar, including plain concrete, but excluding reinforced concrete.

mezzanine. An intermediate floor between the floor and ceiling of any space that is completely open or provides adequate visibility.

General Provisions

ings, stools, aprons, baseboards, chair rails, picture molds, cornice moldings, and moldings applied for decoration.

kitchen. Space, 60 square feet or more in floor area, used for cooking or preparation of food.

kitchenette. Space, less than 60 square feet in floor area, used for cooking or preparation of food.

legal open space. Open space on the premises, such as yards or courts, or an open space at least 25 feet wide permanently dedicated to public use which abuts the premises.

load, dead. Weight of all permanent construction, including walls, framing, floors, roofs, partitions, stairways, and fixed building-service equipment.

load, design. Total load which a structure is designed to sustain.

load, imposed. All loads, exclusive of dead load, that a structure is to sustain.

load, live. Load imposed solely by the occupancy.

load, racking. Load applied in the plane of an assembly in such manner as to lengthen one diagonal and shorten the other.

lobby. A public lounge or waiting place adjacent to and connected with other spaces and a passageway which serves as a principal entrance or exit.

lodger. A transient, temporary, or permanent paying guest.

2 ←
lodging house. A multiple dwelling used primarily for the purpose of furnishing lodging, with or without meals, to fifteen or less transient occupants, for compensation.

lot line. Line dividing one premises from another, or from a street or other public space.

luminous ceiling. Light-transmitting panels suspended below light sources and supported from the construction above.

masonry. A construction of units of such materials as clay, shale, concrete, glass, gypsum, or stone, set in mortar, including plain concrete, but excluding reinforced concrete.

mezzanine. An intermediate floor between the floor and ceiling of any space that is completely open or provides adequate visibility.

General Provisions

mixed occupancy. Occupancy of a building in part for residential use and in part for some other use not accessory thereto.

motel. A multiple dwelling, intended primarily for motorists, not over two stories in height, in which the exit from each dwelling unit or sleeping room is directly to the exterior. (Includes but is not limited to the terms motor court, motor hotel, tourist court.)

¹⁹⁷⁹ **multiple dwelling.** a—building containing three or more dwelling units; b—building containing living, sanitary and sleeping facilities occupied by one or two families and more than four lodgers residing with either one of such families; c—building with one or more sleeping rooms, other than a one- or two-family dwelling, used or occupied by permanent or transient paying guests or tenants; d—building with sleeping accommodations for more than five persons used or occupied as a club, dormitory, fraternity or sorority house, or for similar uses; e—building used or occupied as a convalescent, old-age or nursing home, but not including private or public hospitals or public institutions; f—community residence.

municipality. A city, town or village.

noncombustible. Material or combination of materials which will not ignite, support combustion, or liberate flammable gas when subjected to fire when tested in accordance with generally accepted standards.

nonhabitable space. Space used as kitchenettes, pantries, bath, toilet, laundry, rest, dressing, locker, storage, utility, heater, and boiler rooms, closets, and other spaces for service and maintenance of the building, and those spaces used for access and vertical travel between stories. See definitions of **habitable space**, **public space**, and **exit**.

nursing home. A building used for the accommodation and care of persons with, or recuperating from, illness or incapacity, where nursing services are furnished.

occupancy. Use of a building, structure, or premises.

occupied. Used, or intended, arranged or designed to be used.

occupied space. Space within a building wherein persons normally assemble, work or remain for a period of time, including space for public use where not more than ninety-nine

General Provisions

persons congregate. See definitions of assembly space, habitable space, nonhabitable space and public space.

old-age home. A building used for the accommodation and care of persons of advanced age.

¹⁹⁸⁰ **open parking structure.** A structure for the parking of motor vehicles having at least 50 per cent of two exterior sides of each story permanently open.

opening protective. Assembly of materials and accessories, including frames and hardware, installed in a wall, partition, floor, ceiling or roof opening to prevent, resist or retard the passage of fire, flame, excessive heat or hot gases.

—**automatic.** Constructed and arranged to operate other than manually; if open, it will close when subjected to a predetermined temperature or rate of temperature rise.

—**self-closing.** Arranged and equipped with devices which will insure closing after having been opened.

owner. Owner of the freehold of the premises or lesser estate therein, a mortgagee or vendee in possession, assignee of rents, receiver, executor, trustee, lessee, or other person, firm, or corporation in control of a building.

premises. A lot, plot, or parcel of land including the buildings or structures thereon.

projection, street. Any part of a structure or material attached thereto extending or projecting beyond the street building line, including but not limited to architectural features, marquees, fire escapes, signs, flag poles.

property line. Line establishing the boundaries of premises.

public space. Space within a building for public use, such as lounges, reception, ball, meeting, lecture and recreation rooms, banquet and dining rooms and their kitchens, swimming pools, and lobbies exceeding 800 square feet.

¹⁹⁸⁰ **repair.** Replacement or renewal, excluding additions, of any part of a building, structure, device, or equipment, with like or similar materials or parts, for the purpose of maintenance, preservation or restoration of such building, structure, device or equipment.

required. Required by this Code.

residual deflection. Deflection resulting from an applied load, remaining after removal of such load.

roof covering. Material applied to roof surfaces for protec-

General Provisions

tion against the elements. Roof insulation shall not be deemed to be a roof covering.

self-closing. See definition under **opening protective**.

shaft. A vertical opening or enclosed space extending through two or more floors of a building, or through a floor and roof.

shall. As used in this Code, is mandatory.

sleeping room. Room used for sleeping, primarily for single tenant occupancy.

¹⁹⁷⁶ **smoke-detecting alarm device, single-station.** An assembly comprised of a photoelectric or ionization type of smoke detector, control equipment and audible alarm in one unit, which upon detection of smoke, activates the alarm.

smoke-detecting system. See definition of fire- and smoke-detecting system.

smoke pipe. Enclosed passage, used to convey the products of combustion of any fuel to a flue.

smokestack. Enclosed passage primarily vertical, used for removal to the outer air of products of combustion of any fuel.

smoke stop. A partition in corridors, or between spaces, to retard the passage of smoke, with any opening in such partition protected by a door equipped with a self-closing device.

sprinkler system. A system of piping and appurtenances designed and installed in accordance with generally accepted standards so that heat from a fire will automatically cause water to be discharged over the fire area to extinguish it or prevent its further spread.

stairway. One or more flights of stairs and the necessary landings and platforms connected therewith to form a continuous passage from one floor to another.

standpipe system. Approved installation of piping and appurtenances, whereby all parts of a building can be quickly reached with an effective stream of water.

story. Portion of a building which is between one floor level and the next higher floor level or the roof. See sections B 203-1i and B 203-1j.

street. Throughfare dedicated and accepted by a municipality for public use or legally existing on any map of a subdivision filed in the manner provided by law.

street line. Line dividing a lot, plot, or parcel from a street.

General Provisions

structural damage. Loosening, twisting, warping, cracking, distortion, or breaking of any piece, or of any fastening or joint, in a structural assembly, with loss of sustaining capacity of the assembly. The following shall not be deemed to constitute structural damage: small cracks in reinforced concrete, perpendicular to the reinforcing bars; deformation of sheet material when a structural assembly is under applied load, which increases as such load increases but which disappears when such load is removed.

structural failure. Rupture; loss of sustaining capacity or stability; marked increase in strain without increase in load; deformation increasing more rapidly than the increase in imposed load.

structure. An assembly of materials, forming a construction framed of component structural parts for occupancy or use, including buildings.

¹⁹⁷⁹ **thermal barrier.** A noncombustible protective shield which when applied on the interior of a building to cover foam plastic insulation shall remain in place and provide fire protection for at least 15 minutes.

toilet room. Enclosed space, containing one or more water closets, which may also contain one or more lavatories, urinals, and other plumbing fixtures. See definition of **bathroom**.

ventilation. Supply and removal of air to and from any space by natural or mechanical means.

ventilation, mechanical. Ventilation by power-driven devices.

ventilation, natural. Ventilation by opening to outer air through windows, skylights, doors, louvers, or stacks with or without wind-driven devices.

vestibule. An enclosed space, with doors or opening protectives, to provide protected passage between the exterior and interior of a building, or between spaces within a building.

wall, curtain. A nonbearing wall between columns or piers that is not supported at each story.

wall, fire. A wall of noncombustible construction, with qualities of fire resistance and structural stability, which completely subdivides a building into fire areas, and which resists the spread of fire.

General Provisions

wall, panel. A nonbearing wall built between columns in skeleton construction and wholly supported at each story.

wall, parapet. Free standing portion of a wall above the roof.

wall, party. A wall on an interior lot line used or adapted for joint service between two buildings or structures.

wall, spandrel. Portion of an exterior wall between top of one opening and bottom of another opening in the story directly above.

watchman's system. An approved installation of equipment for the purpose of recording the rounds of a watchman.

yard. An open unoccupied space on the lot, plot, or parcel of land on which the building stands, which extends the entire length of the front or rear or interior lot line.

yield strength. Stress at which a material exhibits a specified limiting permanent set.

B 109 (704.1)

SAFETY DURING CONSTRUCTION

a—Construction, within the scope of this Code, shall be performed in such manner that the workmen and public shall be protected from injury, and adjoining property shall be protected from damage, by the use of scaffolding, underpinning, or other approved methods in conformity with generally accepted standards.

b—Access to all utilities and public facilities, including among others, fire hydrants, fire alarm boxes, police call boxes, street lights, and manholes, shall be kept unobstructed during construction.

c—Fuel-burning equipment furnishing temporary heat during construction, except portable equipment, shall be provided with a smokepipe, chimney or flue to convey the products of combustion to the exterior without creating a health hazard. Confined spaces having portable fuel-burning equipment shall be adequately ventilated so as to prevent dangerous accumulation of products of combustion.

B 110 (704.2)

SAFETY DURING DEMOLITION

a—Safe and sanitary conditions shall be provided where demolition and wrecking operations are being carried on. Work shall be done in such manner that hazard from fire, possibility of injury, danger to health, and conditions which

General Provisions

may constitute a public nuisance will be minimized, in conformity with generally accepted standards.

b—Access to utilities and public facilities, including among others, fire hydrants, fire alarm boxes, police call boxes, street lights, and manholes, shall be kept unobstructed during demolition.

c—Gas, electric, sewer, heat, power, water and other service connections shall be disconnected, removed, or sealed, in conformity with the applicable regulations of the public utility or municipal agency having jurisdiction.

1980

**B 111
(705)**

Energy Conservation

Buildings shall be designed and constructed so that the thermal resistance and air leakage at the building envelope and the design and selection of equipment and systems for the purpose of energy conservation shall comply with the applicable provisions set forth in the State Energy Conservation Construction Code.

Part 2

Space Requirements

**B 201
(710)**

GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

a—Buildings occupied in whole or in part as multiple dwellings as defined in this Code shall be designed and constructed so as to comply with the requirements hereinafter set forth concerning size, light, heat, ventilation, and facilities, in order to provide safe and healthful environment.

b—The term, accessory use, shall have a uniform meaning and shall apply in the same manner and under the same conditions or restrictions to all buildings.

**B 202
(711)**

CLASSIFICATION OF BUILDINGS

**B 202-1
(711.1)**

Classification by Occupancy Groups

Multiple dwellings for the purpose of this Code shall be classified in respect to the permanent or transient character of their occupancy groups, and to the number and physical condition of the occupants. The classification shall be in accordance with the following groups:

¹⁹⁷⁹ **Group B1:**

Buildings containing one or two dwelling units with more than four lodgers residing with a family in either one of such dwelling units;

Buildings containing three or more dwelling units;

Apartment houses and apartment hotels;

Hotels;

Lodging houses;

Buildings with sleeping accommodations for more than five persons used or occupied as a club, dormitory, fraternity or sorority house, or for similar uses;

Garden apartments;

Motels;

Community residences.

¹⁹⁷⁴ **Group B2:**

Old age and nursing homes other than Group B3 occupancy.

Space Requirements

Group B3:

Buildings for Senior Citizens, intended primarily for persons 62 years old or more, who are in good physical condition and do not require physical assistance.

B 202-2 **Classification by Type of Construction** (711.2)

B 202-2.1 **General Requirements** (711.2a)

a—Buildings shall be classified by types of construction, based on their relative fire safety. Certain of such types shall be classified as subtypes, based on the relative fire-resistance ratings of the materials and assemblies of which they are constructed, as follows:

Subtypes 1a and 1b are both fire-resistive construction, but vary as to the degree of fire resistance of their structural elements.

Subtypes 2a, 4a and 5a are those in which all structural elements are required to be protected with fire-resistive materials of the ratings designated for those subtypes.

Subtypes 2b, 4b and 5b are those in which the structural elements generally are not required to be protected nor to have any specific fire-resistance rating, except where a specific requirement for the protection of exit enclosures and first floor by fire-resistive materials is established.

b—The fire resistance of each structural element for each type and subtype shall be that set forth in table B 202-2.

c—Openings in fire walls, fire separations, shafts and exit enclosures shall be closed by opening protectives as required by section B 402-4.8.

d—A building which conforms to the type of construction required by its occupancy, height and area, need not comply with the requirements for a higher type of construction even though a portion of its construction is of such higher type.

¹⁹⁷³ e—Where a building is constructed of two or more types of construction, the construction classification of the entire building shall be the lowest of such types of construction; except that where a fire wall separates two types of construction, each type is permitted to be regulated separately for maximum height and fire area as set forth in tables B 203-1a, 1b, 1.1a and 1.1b, under the following conditions:

¹⁹⁷⁷ 1) Such fire wall shall be of noncombustible material

TABLE B 202-2. (I-711)—MINIMUM FIRE RESISTANCE REQUIREMENTS OF STRUCTURAL ELEMENTS
(By types of construction; fire-resistance ratings in hours)

Structural element	Construction classification ¹					
	Type 1 (Fire-Resistive)	Type 2 (Non-combustible)		Type 3 (Heavy timber)	Type 4 (Ordinary)	
		2a	2b		4a	4b
Exterior:						
Bearing walls	3	2	nc	2	2	2
Nonbearing walls ²	2	2	nc	2	2	2
Panel and curtain walls ²	3/4	3/4	nc			
Party walls ³	3	2	2	3	2	2
Interior:						
Fire walls ⁴	3	2	2	3	2	2
Bearing walls or partitions	3	2	nc ^a	2	3/4	2
Partitions enclosing stairways, hoistways, shafts, other vertical openings and corridors	2 ^s	2 ^s	2 ^s	2 ^s	2 ^s	2 ^s
Construction separating tenant spaces	1	1	3/4	3/4	3/4	3/4
Columns, beams, girders and trusses (other than roof trusses):						
supporting more than 1 floor or 1 floor and a roof	3	2	nc	3/4	3/4	3/4
supporting 1 floor or a roof	2	3/4	nc	3/4	3/4	3/4
Floor construction including beams	2	1 ⁷	nc ^{7, 8}	3/4 ⁷	3/4 ⁷	C ^{7, 8}
Roof construction including purlins, beams and roof trusses	1 ^s	3/4 ^s	nc	3/4	3/4	C

- For classification of buildings by type of construction, see section B 202.2. 1a
- For exceptions, see section B 401-3.3b and section B 401-3.4b.
- Party walls shall comply with section B 401-8.
- Fire walls shall comply with section B 402-2.
- In buildings not more than three stories in height, and with not more than eight dwelling units within a fire area, 1 hour in type 1 construction, 3/4 hour in type 2, 3, and 4 construction. See section B 402-4.4g.
- If every part of noncombustible roof truss is more than 15 feet above floor next below, protection of the roof truss is not required. Roof construction shall be of noncombustible material, but is not required to have any rating.
- In buildings of type 2, 3, and 4 construction, more than three stories in height, the floor of the lowest story and all construction below, shall be type 1.
- 3/4 hour when separating tenant spaces, and for floor construction over a cellar or basement.

Space Requirements

and shall conform to the requirements of section B 402-2.

2) The fire-resistance rating of such fire wall shall be that required for the higher type of construction.

3) Where the lower of the types of construction has a combustible roof, the fire wall shall extend above the combustible roof.

4) Exterior wall openings in the higher type of construction, located within 10 feet horizontally from the fire wall, shall be equipped with opening protectives. See section B 401-4.1e.

¹⁹⁷³ f—Where portions of a building are of different heights, the height of the building shall be the greater height, except that where a fire wall separates such portions, each such portion is permitted to be regulated separately for type of construction and maximum height and fire area, under the conditions set forth in section B 202-2.1e.

B 203 (712)

HEIGHT, FIRE AREA, AND TYPE OF CONSTRUCTION

B 203-1 (712.1)

General Requirements

a—The height and fire area of a building shall be determined by the occupancy and use group, the construction classification, and the fire protection equipment of the building.

b—Multiple dwellings shall be 100 feet or less from a street, road or driveway providing access for fire-fighting equipment.

c—A building erected within more than one fire limit shall comply with the requirements of the more restrictive fire limit.

d—Zoning or fire-limit regulations that impose more restrictive height or fire-area limitations than required by this section shall control.

e—In a two-story building of type 5 construction having a cellar or basement that is not a story, the exterior walls of the cellar or basement shall be of masonry construction extending the full height of the basement or cellar.

f—The height, number of stories, and fire areas between exterior walls or between exterior walls and fire walls, indicated for each occupancy group and use for each type or subtype of construction, shall not exceed those set forth in tables B203-1a, B203-1b, B203-1.1a and B203-1.1b.

Space Requirements

g—The maximum fire area permitted for the highest story of a building determines the maximum fire area for each story in the building.

h—The height in feet of a building shall be determined from a datum established by the average elevation of paved open spaces which are suitable for the approach of fire department equipment, and curb levels where established, both of which are within 50 feet of the exterior walls of the building; where such distance is exceeded the height in feet shall be determined as set forth in section B 203-1i. Such height shall be measured from such datum to the highest level of a flat or mansard roof, or to the average height of a pitched, gabled, hip or gambrel roof, excluding bulkheads and other roof construction as set forth in section B 203-1j(5).

i—The height in stories of a building shall be determined from a datum established by the average elevation of the finished grade adjoining the exterior walls of the building, where such walls face legal open space or abut other open space which is level for 10 feet or more. Areaways, driveways and entrances of abrupt change in elevation and totaling 10 per cent or less of the length of the wall shall not be included in determining the average elevation.

j—The following locations shall not be deemed to be a story:

- (1) A mezzanine with a floor area less than 5000 square feet and less than $\frac{1}{3}$ of the floor area of the space wherein the mezzanine is contained.
- (2) A basement where the finished floor immediately above is less than 7 feet above the average elevation of the finished grade as described in this section.
- (3) A cellar.
- (4) An attic not meeting the requirements for habitable space.
- (5) Roof constructions enclosing stairs or equipment other than for elevators, provided they are less than 12 feet in height and do not occupy more than 30 per cent of the area of the roof on which they are located; and elevator hoistway and elevator machine rooms.

Space Requirements

TABLE B 203-1a. (I-712)—MAXIMUM HEIGHT AND FIRE AREA FOR GROUP B1 AND B3 OCCUPANCY¹

Maximum height		Maximum fire area by construction classification in square feet						
In stories	In feet	Type 1 (Fire resistive)	Type 2 (Noncombustible)		Type 3 ¹ (Heavy timber)	Type 4 ^{1, 2} (Ordinary)		Type 5 ^{2, 3} (Wood frame)
			2a	2b		4a	4b	
1	15	Unlimited	16,000	8,500	10,000	10,000	7,500	6,000
2	30	Unlimited	14,000	6,500	8,000	8,000	5,500	4,000
3	40	Unlimited	12,000	np	6,000	6,000	np	np
4	50	Unlimited	11,000	np	5,000	5,000	np	np
5	60	Unlimited	10,000	np	4,000	4,000	np	np
6	70	Unlimited	9,000	np	3,000	3,000	np	np
7	80	Unlimited	8,000	np	np	np	np	np
8	90	Unlimited	7,000	np	np	np	np	np
9	100	Unlimited	6,000	np	np	np	np	np
10 or more	more than 100	Unlimited	np	np	np	np	np	np

1. In hotels of type 3 and 4 construction, the height shall not exceed two stories, except that if a sprinkler system is installed throughout the buildings, the height may be increased to four stories, provided there is no increase in fire area because of such sprinkler system.

2. Areas indicated may be increased 25 percent for garden apartments less than three stories in height, and for motels.

3. Not permitted within fire limits.

4. For group B1 occupancy, areas may be increased 100 percent if a sprinkler system is installed throughout such building.

Space Requirements

TABLE B 203-1b. (II-712)—MAXIMUM HEIGHT AND FIRE AREA FOR GROUP B2 OCCUPANCY

Maximum height		Maximum fire area by construction classification in square feet						
In stories	In feet	Type 1 (Fire resistive)	Type 2 (Noncombustible)		Type 3 (Heavy timber)	Type 4 (Ordinary)		Type 5 ¹ (Wood frame)
			2a	2b		4a	4b	
1	15	Unlimited	16,000	10,000	10,000	10,000	7,000	6,000
2	30	Unlimited	15,000	7,000	7,000	7,000	6,000	5,000
3	40	Unlimited	13,000	np	np	np	np	np
4	50	Unlimited	10,000	np	np	np	np	np
5 or more	More than 50	Unlimited	np	np	np	np	np	np

¹ Not permitted within fire limits.

Space Requirements

TABLE B 203-1.1a. (III-712)—MAXIMUM HEIGHT AND FIRE AREA FOR SEPARATE GARAGE BUILDINGS¹ UPON THE PREMISES OF MULTIPLE DWELLINGS

Maximum height ²		Basic fire area by construction classification in square feet ³								
In stories	In feet	Type 1 (Fire resistive)		Type 2 (Noncombustible)		Type 3 (Heavy timber)	Type 4 (Ordinary)		Type 5 (Wood frame) ⁴	
		1a	1b	2a	2b		4a	4b	5a	5b
1	un	un	un	un	18,000	21,000	18,000	12,000	9,000	6,000
2	40	un	un	21,000	15,000	18,000	15,000	9,000	6,000	3,000
3	55	un	un	18,000	np	15,000	12,000	6,000	np	np
4	70	un	un	15,000	np	12,000	9,000	np	np	np
5	85	un	un	12,000	np	np	np	np	np	np
6	100	un	un	np	np	np	np	np	np	np
More than 6	More than 100	un	un	np	np	np	np	np	np	np

- Where used for parking or storage only, classification shall be low hazard. Where repairs are made therein, classification shall be moderate hazard; see group C 4.2 in table C 203-1a of the State Building Construction Code applicable to General Building Construction.
- If sprinkler system is installed throughout the building, the height may be increased by one story or 12 feet.
- Fire areas are based on frontage on one street or legal open space at least 50 feet wide.
- Not permitted within fire limits.

If a fire area faces or abuts such streets or spaces on two sides, it may be 50 per cent larger than the basic areas shown; on three sides, 75 per cent larger; on four sides, 100 per cent larger—providing that such street or open space is served by fire hydrants, and the roadways are maintained clear, unobstructed, and accessible at all times for fire-fighting equipment. These fire areas may be increased 100 per cent providing the building is equipped with an automatic sprinkler system.

**1990 TABLE B 203-1.1b. (IV-712)—MAXIMUM HEIGHT AND FIRE AREA FOR OPEN PARKING STRUCTURES
UPON THE PREMISES OF MULTIPLE DWELLINGS**

Number of parking levels ¹	Basic fire area by construction classification in square feet ^{2,3}								
	Type 1 (Fire resistive)		Type 2 (Noncombustible)		Type 3 (Heavy timber)	Type 4 (Ordinary)		Type 5 (Wood frame)	
	1a	1b	2a	2b		4a	4b	5a	5b
1	un	un	un	un	np	np	np	np	np
2	un	un	un	un	np	np	np	np	np
3	un	un	un	30,000 ⁴	np	np	np	np	np
4	un	un	un	30,000 ⁴	np	np	np	np	np
5	un	un	50,000	30,000 ⁴	np	np	np	np	np
6	un	un	50,000	30,000 ⁴	np	np	np	np	np
More than 6	un	un	50,000 ⁵	30,000 ⁶	np	np	np	np	np

1. Parking permitted on roof in addition to the parking level indicated.
2. Fire areas are based on frontage on one street or legal open space at least 50 feet wide.
3. If a fire area faces or abuts such streets or spaces on two sides, it may be 50 per cent larger than the basic areas shown; on three sides, 75 per cent larger; on four sides, 100 per cent larger—providing that such street or open space is served by fire hydrants, and the roadways are maintained clear, unobstructed, and accessible at all times for fire-fighting equipment. These fire areas may be increased 100 per cent providing the building is equipped with an automatic sprinkler system.
4. The maximum allowable fire area may be 75,000 square feet provided:
 - a) at least two open slides are accessible to fire-fighting equipment and
5. Not more than 10 stories.
6. Not more than 8 stories.
- b) on each level at least 50 percent of two exterior sides shall be permanently open and such openings shall total not less than 40 percent of the perimeter of the structure and
- c) the horizontal distance on any parking level to an open exterior wall does not exceed 200 feet.

Space Requirements

Space Requirements

B 203-2 (712.2)

Existing Buildings

a—Except within fire limits, a building of type 5 construction, not exceeding three stories or 40 feet in height, existing prior to the date on which this Code became applicable in the municipality, may be altered or converted to group B1 occupancy provided that such building, when so altered or converted, complies in all other respects with the requirements of this Code.

b—Except within fire limits, in a building of group B1 occupancy existing prior to the date on which this Code became applicable in the municipality, the floor area of public space may be increased to exceed the areas shown in table B 203-1a, provided that the entire building is equipped with an approved sprinkler system, the addition is not more than two stories above grade, and exits from the addition are directly to the exterior. Except as hereinbefore provided the addition shall comply in all other respects with the requirements of this Code.

c—Where an existing multiple dwelling is altered or repaired as set forth in section B 105-2.1c, public space in such building shall not require a 9-foot height as set forth in section B 207-2, provided the public space is at least 8 feet high, and the alteration does not increase the building height, nor increase the area of any story or floor level.

1980

B 203-2.1 (712.2a)

Historic Buildings

Buildings which are officially designated as historic buildings because of historical or architectural importance shall be permitted to be repaired for the purpose of historical preservation or restoration without conforming to the requirements of the Code provided that the existing use is continued and the repairs are acceptable to and deemed safe by the local authority having jurisdiction except that requirements for facilities for the physically handicapped shall remain applicable.

B 204 (713)

YARDS AND COURTS

B 204-1 (713.1)

General Requirements

a—Required windows or other openings providing natural light and ventilation for habitable space shall open upon yards

Space Requirements

or courts or other legal open spaces or any combinations thereof which comply with the requirements of this section.

b—Zoning regulations shall take precedence over less restrictive requirements of this section.

c—Yards and courts shall be measured from the building outward, shall not begin higher than the floor level of the first habitable story, and in no event begin higher than 23 feet above the curb level or finished grade.

d—Yards and courts shall be open and unobstructed for their required area and full height, except for window sills, belt courses and other architectural or ornamental projections which project not more than 4 inches from a wall.

e—Yards shall be provided with access to a street, either directly or through an unobstructed passage of fire-resistive construction not less than 3 feet wide and 7 feet high.

f—Any recess or offset of a court shall have a minimum width of 5 feet and the depth of such recess or offset shall not exceed its width.

B 204-2 (713.2)

Yards

a—A rear yard shall be provided at the rear of the building and shall extend along the rear lot line of a lot that abuts other lots or portions of lots; a rear yard is not required where the building abuts legal open space which is off the premises and has a finished grade which is approximately level. For buildings not more than 40 feet in height, on interior lots, the minimum rear yard depth shall be 20 feet. For each foot that the rear wall of the building or portion thereof exceeds 40 feet in height, measured from the level of the rear yard, the depth of the rear yard shall be increased 3 inches. For such buildings on corner lots, the first 50 feet of the rear yard, measured from the side street line, may be reduced to one half of the depth of the rear yard required on an interior lot.

b—If a side yard is provided or required, it shall be not less than 5 feet in width, at any point. For each foot that the side wall of a building or portion thereof exceeds 30 feet in height, the width of a required side yard shall be increased 2 inches.

B 204-3 (713.3)

Courts

a—Outer courts shall have a minimum width of 3 inches for each foot of height of the enclosing walls but not less than 5

Space Requirements

feet measured at any point. The depth of an outer court shall not exceed four times the width.

b—Inner courts shall have a minimum width of 4 inches for each foot of the height of the enclosing walls, but the least horizontal dimension of such courts shall be not less than 10 feet. The depth of an inner court shall be at least 1½ times the width.

c—An air intake of fire-resistive construction shall be provided at or near the lowest level of every inner court, connecting directly with a street or yard. Such intake shall have a minimum dimension of 3 feet and a minimum cross-sectional area of 20 square feet, and shall be unobstructed throughout, except that where such air intake is not used as a passage, gates or grilles which do not interfere with ventilation may be installed.

**B 205
(714)**

SPACE

**B 205-1
(714.1)**

General Requirements

a—Space shall be classified as habitable, occupied, public and nonhabitable.

b—Habitable, occupied and public spaces shall be so arranged, located, lighted, and ventilated as to provide safe and healthful environment.

c—Nonhabitable space shall have such of those requirements set forth in paragraph b above as may be necessary for the intended use.

d—Food storage spaces for public kitchens shall be constructed so as to be verminproof and rodentproof.

e—Public kitchens and public toilets shall have walls and floors constructed of nonabsorbent materials which are easily cleanable.

f—Walking surfaces to which persons have access and which are elevated more than 18 inches above adjacent surfaces, including but not limited to bridges, balconies, mezzanines and fire terraces, shall be protected by parapet walls or guardrails at least 3 feet in height and meeting the requirements set forth in section B 304-9, except where such guardrails will interfere with the intended use, as for example, lecture platforms, loading platforms and similar constructions.

Space Requirements

g—Where exposed beams project below the ceiling of habitable or occupied space, and such beams occupy an area of 5 per cent or more of the area of the ceiling, the height of the space shall be measured from finished floor to the underside of the beams; where the ratio is less than 5 per cent, the height shall be measured to the ceiling, and the height to the underside of such beams shall be not less than 7 feet.

**B 206
(715)**

HABITABLE SPACE

**B 206-1
(715.1)**

Size

a—Habitable space shall have a minimum height of 7 feet 6 inches measured from finished floor to finished ceiling.

b—Every dwelling unit shall contain at least one habitable room which shall contain a minimum of 150 square feet of floor area and shall have a minimum horizontal dimension of 10 feet.

c—Kitchens shall have a minimum of 60 square feet of floor area, and other habitable spaces shall contain not less than 80 square feet of floor area and shall have a minimum horizontal dimension of 7 feet.

d—Every alcove less than 60 square feet in area, except a cooking space or foyer, shall be deemed to be part of a habitable room. The area of the opening in the dividing partition between the alcove and the room shall be at least 80 per cent of the wall area of such partition, measured on the alcove side, but not less than 40 square feet. The depth of such alcove shall not exceed half its width. The floor area of the alcove shall be added to the floor area of the room for the purpose of complying with the requirements of section B 209. An alcove with an area of 60 square feet or more, but less than the required area of a habitable room, shall be separately lighted and ventilated as required for habitable space.

**B 206-2
(715.2)**

Location in Respect to Grade Level

a—Floor level of habitable space shall be not more than 4 feet below the average adjoining finished grade, except that below-grade space is permitted as a habitable space provided the grade adjoining one exterior wall, for the width of the habitable space, is at or lower than the floor level of the habitable space, the depth is not more than four times the

Space Requirements

height, and such space conforms to all other requirements for habitable space. Public space, occupied space and play or recreation rooms may be located below grade.

b—Windows for light and ventilation shall open upon a required yard, court, or legal open space having access to a public thoroughfare. The elevation of the finished grade shall be at least 6 inches below sills of such windows.

B 206-3 (715.3)

Miscellaneous Requirements

a—Dwelling units shall be separated from each other and from other spaces outside the dwelling unit.

b—Separation between dwelling units shall provide a sound transmission loss of at least 40 decibels in the frequency range of 256 to 1024 cycles per second.

c—Sleeping rooms within dwelling units shall be separated from each other and from other spaces outside the sleeping rooms to provide privacy.

B 207 (716)

OCCUPIED SPACE AND PUBLIC SPACE

B 207-1 (716.1)

Occupied Space

a—Occupied space shall have a minimum height of 8 feet, measured from finished floor to finished ceiling.

b—Areas below and above a balcony or mezzanine shall have a minimum clear height of 7 feet 6 inches.

B 207-2 (716.2)

Public Space

Public space shall be at least as high as is required for occupied space, except that public space in hotels and motels shall have a minimum height of 9 feet measured from finished floor to finished ceiling, and except that public space below and above a balcony or mezzanine shall have a minimum clear height of 7 feet 6 inches.

B 208 (717)

NONHABITABLE SPACE

B 208-1 (717.1)

General Requirements

a—Nonhabitable space shall be provided with light and ventilation adequate for the intended use of each space. Nonhabitable space wherein persons work or remain for a period of time, shall have a minimum height of 7 feet.

Space Requirements

b—Play or recreation rooms may be located in cellars, and shall conform to the requirements of section B 211.

B 208-2 (717.2)

Location of Toilet Rooms

a—Toilet rooms shall be accessible from any sleeping room without passing through any other sleeping room.

b—Unless located within dwelling units or directly connected with sleeping rooms, toilet rooms shall be provided in each story containing habitable space, and shall be accessible thereto.

c—Toilet rooms shall be in readily accessible locations adjacent to public spaces, and in separate rooms for each sex.

d—Toilet rooms and bathrooms shall provide privacy.

B 208-2.1 (717.2b)

Location of Toilet Rooms for Employees

a—Toilet rooms shall be in separate rooms for each sex, where there are employees of both sexes, readily accessible to their regular working places.

b—Toilet rooms shall not open directly into any public kitchen or other public space used for the cooking or preparation of food.

B 208-2.2 (717.2c)

Waterproofing of Bathroom and Toilet Room Floors

Bathroom, shower room, toilet room and similar space shall have waterproof floors; such waterproofing shall extend ⁴/₄ inches or more above floors except at doors, so that floors can be flushed or washed without leaking.

B 208-3 (717.3)

Glazing in Doors, Shower Stalls, Fixed Panels and Bathtub Enclosures

a—Glazing in doors, shower doors and enclosures, and bathtub doors and enclosures shall be so sized, constructed, treated or combined with other materials as to minimize effectively the possibility of injury to persons in the event the glazing is cracked or broken.

b—Glazing in doors, fixed side panels adjoining doors and interior partitions; where such glazing extends to within 18 inches of floor level, shall conform to the requirements of paragraph a of this section, or in lieu thereof in fixed panels, permanent construction shall be provided to guard against accidental human impact.

Space Requirements

c—Shatter-resistant material may be substituted for glass intended to be used as described in this section. Where used in exits such material shall conform to the requirements of sections B 403-1, B 403-4 and B 403-5.

d—Where generally accepted standards require glazing to be identified, each piece shall be permanently and legibly marked in conformity with the requirements of the generally accepted standards.

**B 209
(718)**

LIGHT AND VENTILATION

**B 209-1
(718.1)**

General Requirements

a—Habitable spaces shall be provided with both natural light and artificial light except that kitchens less than 80 square feet in area, shall be permitted with artificial light only where another dining area is provided.

b—All spaces, except closets or similar spaces, shall be provided with artificial light.

c—Habitable spaces shall be provided with natural ventilation, and may also be provided with mechanical ventilation, except that kitchens less than 80 square feet in area, shall be permitted with ventilation conforming to the requirements for kitchenettes, where another dining area is provided.

d—Kitchens and kitchenettes having domestic ranges more than 15 feet from an opening for natural ventilation shall be provided with mechanical ventilation as set forth in table B 508-3.3f.

e—The tops of windows or equivalent sources of natural light and ventilation in habitable space shall not be more than 18 inches below finished ceilings, unless the top of at least one such source in each room is at least 7 feet above the finished floor.

f—Public spaces shall be provided with either natural ventilation or mechanical ventilation, or both.

g—Artificial light and mechanical ventilation shall comply with sections B 507-2 and B 508.

h—Required lighting or ventilating openings shall not face on a street, alley or other space permanently dedicated to public use of lesser width than required for side yards or courts, except that the width of such street, alley, or space may be credited in the computation to establish the width or depth of side yards or courts.

Space Requirements

B 209-2 (718.2)

Natural Light for Habitable Space

a—Natural light shall be provided through one or more windows, skylights, transparent or translucent panels, or any combination thereof, that face directly on legal open spaces above the adjoining finished grade, or above a roof.

b—Each habitable space shall be provided with natural light by means of openings described in this section, in an amount equivalent to that transmitted through clear glass equal in area to ~~10~~⁸ per cent of the floor area of the habitable space.

deleted
c—The lighting area equivalent to clear glass shall be increased to $12\frac{1}{2}$ per cent of the floor area if the natural light is from a single light area located entirely in one wall which is more than 15 feet distant from the opposite wall, or if the distance from the jamb of the light area is more than 9 feet from an intersecting wall. No part of any room shall be more than four times its clear height distant from the lighting opening.

B 209-3 (718.3)

Natural Ventilation for Habitable Space

a—Natural ventilation shall be provided through openable parts of windows or other openings in exterior walls that face legal open spaces above the adjoining finished grade or above a roof, or through openable parts of skylights.

b—Each habitable space shall be provided with natural ventilation through openable parts of the opening described in this section which are equal in area to not less than ~~5~~⁴ per cent of the total floor area of each habitable space.

deleted
c—The openable ventilating area shall be increased to $6\frac{1}{4}$ per cent of the floor area if the ventilation is from a single ventilating area located entirely in one wall which is more than 15 feet distant from the opposite wall, or if the distance from the jamb of the ventilating area is more than 9 feet from an intersecting wall. No part of a room shall be more than four times its clear height distant from the ventilating opening.

B 209-4 (718.4)

Ventilation for Occupied Space and Public Space

Occupied space and public space, if provided only with natural ventilation, shall comply with the requirements of section B 209-3.

Space Requirements

B 209-5 (718.5) **Ventilation for Nonhabitable Space**

a—The following spaces shall be provided with natural ventilation by openings which comply with the requirements of section B 209-3, or with mechanical ventilation as set forth in section B 508. The minimum openable area of the opening for natural ventilation shall be:

**TABLE B 209-5. (I-718)—MINIMUM OPENABLE AREAS
FOR NATURAL VENTILATION**

Space	Minimum openable area
Kitchenettes ¹	3 square feet
Bathrooms	3 square feet
Toilet rooms:	
connected to bedrooms or in dwelling units	3 square feet
used by public or employees	1 square foot per water closet; minimum 3 square feet
Cellars, basements	Openings of sufficient area to provide adequate ventilation.

1. Kitchenettes adjacent to a habitable space, and having no means of separation, shall be deemed to be part of such space.

b—Spaces which contain central heat producing, air conditioning and other equipment, shall be ventilated as set forth in Part 5 of this Code, and air from these spaces shall not be recirculated to other parts of the building.

B 210 (719) **ACCESS AND VERTICAL TRAVEL BETWEEN STORIES**

B 210-1 (719.1) **Stairways and Stairs**

a—Stairways, except intercommunicating or access stairs between not more than two stories within areas of the same occupancy, shall be enclosed as set forth in section B 211-5.

b—Stairways, in addition to those that serve in a required exit, shall be of the fixed type and shall be arranged and constructed for safe ascent and descent. Stairs shall be of sufficient width to serve the occupants, but not less than 28 inches in width.

c—Stairs within a dwelling unit are not required to be enclosed.

d—Ornamental stairs with a minimum width of 5 feet are permitted. If winders are used, width of treads exclusive of nosing shall not be less than 7 inches at any point.

Space Requirements

e—Treads, risers, handrails and railings shall comply with the requirements of section B 211-3.

B 210-2 (719.2)

Elevators

a—Elevators shall be installed in enclosed hoistway shafts which conform to the fire-resistive requirements as set forth in table B 202-2. Not more than four elevators shall be installed in a hoistway designed for more than one elevator.

b—A stairway or other exit shall be accessible from every elevator entrance landing unless the dwelling unit or area served is otherwise provided with required exits.

B 211 (720)

EXITS

B 211-1 (720.1)

General Requirements

a—Every building and structure shall be provided with exits, which shall be arranged, constructed and proportioned in number and width to the number of occupants, the construction and height of the building, and its fire protection equipment, so that all occupants may escape safely from the building in case of emergency.

b—Safe continuous exits shall be provided from the interior of the building or structure to the exterior at street or grade level or to other legal open space connected to a street. Railings, curbs, or other effective barriers shall be provided to insure that automobile parking or other obstruction does not encroach on the space required for exit travel.

c—A required exit from habitable, occupied, or public space in a building shall not lead through a kitchen serving a public dining room, a garage, or a moderate or high capacity heater room.

d—Corridors and required interior stairways in multiple dwellings more than two stories in height, shall be enclosed as set forth in table B 202-2, and separated from each other. Not more than one opening to such stairway shall be provided on each story, and the opening shall be from a corridor or from a vestibule conforming to the requirements for exits. In a 2-story building, where two required interior stairs are open to and connected by an exit corridor, such stairs shall be separated from each other by at least one opening protective at each level.

e—The required width of exits shall not be diminished

Space Requirements

throughout the path of travel to the exterior of the building. Exits shall be plainly marked with directions to a designated termination at a place of safety, as provided in section B 507-2.3, and shall be lighted at all times by natural or artificial light of intensity sufficient for safe travel.

f—Exit from any room may lead through other rooms of the same tenancy except exit shall not lead through bathrooms, toilet rooms, and bedrooms. Each tenant's space shall be provided with means of egress to required exits.

g—Fire escapes shall not be permitted as a means of exit. Exterior stairs shall not be permitted as a means of exit from buildings of group B2 and B3 occupancy.

h—Slide escapes shall not be permitted as exits.

i—The minimum width of passageways, ramps, horizontal exits and stairways shall be 36 inches, except for hotels and group B2 occupancy, in which the minimum width shall be 44 inches. The minimum required width of an exit shall be measured at the narrowest point in line of travel, except that handrails may project on each side a distance not exceeding 3½ inches, and door jambs may project into the required width of doorways not more than 2 inches for each 22-inch unit of width. In determining the width of exits, the capacity of exit stairways and ramps is not required to be cumulative from story to story, except where two or more stairways or ramps join and continue as a single unit. Where exits from assembly space join with exits from other occupancies on the same story, their widths shall be cumulative.

j—Exits shall be located so that they are readily accessible and visible, and arranged so that there are no dead ends extending more than 20 feet beyond an exit stairway, except that for those portions of a building of group B1 occupancy which contain dwelling units only, dead ends extending not more than 40 feet beyond an exit stairway are permitted. Exits shall not be concealed nor the direction to exits obscured by finish, paneling, draperies, furnishings, mirrors, or other objects.

k—Exits and ways of departure shall be maintained so as to provide free and unobstructed egress from all parts of the building. No locks or fastenings to prevent free escape from the inside of any building shall be installed.

l—Where there is more than one group occupancy within a building, exits from each occupancy shall conform to the requirements for such occupancy.

Space Requirements

m—If a roof is used or occupied for purposes other than incidental access by the occupants, exits shall be provided for such occupancy or use as required by this Code.

n—High or moderate capacity heater rooms, refuse rooms, or rooms containing incinerators, oil-filled transformers or equipment producing or using hazardous gas or vapor, shall not have an opening between such space and an exit, lobby, or occupied space not accessory thereto, unless such opening is through an intervening vestibule having a fire-resistance rating as set for the enclosure of such equipment. When serving a high capacity heater room, such vestibule shall be ventilated to the outer air. Where such rooms are located above or below an exit or lobby, the horizontal separation shall be of masonry construction having a fire-resistance rating of not less than 2 hours.

o—Rooms more than 300 square feet in area containing equipment described in paragraph n of this section shall have two exits, except that approved fixed noncombustible construction providing means for reaching grade may be substituted for one exit. Where such rooms are located on a roof, there shall be at least one door to roof and another approved means of access to roof that is remote from such door. Means for reaching grade from roof shall consist of at least one stairway or, where such stairway is not required, shall consist of approved fixed noncombustible construction.

B 211-2 (720.2)

Passageways, Ramps, Horizontal Exits and Fire Terraces

a—Passageways, corridors, hallways, and vestibules, shall have a minimum floor-to-ceiling height of 7 feet 6 inches. They shall be designed to keep their length to a minimum, but in no event shall they exceed 100 feet in length without a smoke stop. Smoke stops may be maintained in an open position provided they are equipped with means for both manual and automatic release. For automatic release, smoke detectors shall be provided on both sides of the smokestop door, and release shall be actuated as set forth in section B 510-7.

b—If two or more exit passageways or ramps converge into each other, the common exit thus formed shall be at least equal in width to three fourths of the combined widths of the exits. The capacity of exit passageways, aisles, corridors, and tunnels shall be based on the same unit exit widths as set forth in table B 211-7b for stairways.

Space Requirements

c—Where passenger elevators discharge at the street floor into a corridor or passageway leading to the street, the corridor or passageway shall be not less than 5 feet in width for five elevators or fewer, and not less than ½-foot additional width for each additional elevator. If stairways also discharge into the same corridor or passageway, the width of the corridor or passageway shall not be less than three fourth of the combined required width for stairways and elevators.

d—Ramps which serve as an exit or part thereof shall not have a gradient of more than 1 in 10, and their surfaces shall be non-slip. Ramps shall conform to the requirements of section B 211-3 so far as applicable, except that intermediate handrails shall not be required. No handrails shall be required where ramps have a slope of less than 1 in 12. One 22-inch unit of ramp width shall be considered the equivalent of one unit of stairway width. Ramps shall have an unobstructed width of at least 36 inches throughout their length except that handrails may project not more than 3½ inches into such width on each side. Ramps located in an exit passageway, aisle, corridor, or tunnel shall be the full width of such passageway, aisle, corridor, or tunnel. Floors of areas of different levels on opposite sides of a horizontal exit shall be connected by a ramp, or by stairs with not less than three risers.

e—Where a stairway connects with, or is continued in any direction by means of a ramp, or where a ramp changes direction, there shall be a level area of platform the full width of the ramp or stairs, but not less than 3 feet in length. Where a door enters upon a ramp there shall be a level area of platform extending at least one third the width of the door beyond the jamb on each side. The pitch of the ramp shall not interfere with the full swing of the door, nor shall such swing of door decrease the required width of the ramp.

f—Horizontal exits which serve as a required means of exit shall have a continuously available path of exit travel leading from each side of the horizontal exit to an enclosed stairway or other required exit leading to legal open spaces outside the building. The floor area on either side of a horizontal exit shall be sufficient to hold the occupants of both floor areas, allowing not less than 3 square feet of floor area per person. Exit openings in walls shall be protected by opening protectives, and shall consist of adjacent openings having doors swinging in opposite directions with a sign on each side of the wall in-

Space Requirements

dicating which door is the exit from that side, except that only one such door is required where fire area on each side is occupied by not more than 50 persons, as determined by table B 211-7a. Bridges and open-air or enclosed balconies that form a part of a horizontal exit shall be constructed of non-cumbustible material, and floors shall be solid and unpierced. Access to bridges and unenclosed balconies shall be through a landing as set forth in section B 211-3.3b.

g—The capacity of a horizontal exit shall be determined as for a doorway, in accordance with table B 211-7b.

h—Fire terraces shall be provided on buildings of type 3 and 4 construction on sloping sites containing dwelling units if the building faces only one street or faces one street and another street on a lower level at the rear. Fire terraces are not required on buildings that front on three or more streets or are located on corner lots. Fire terraces shall extend the full length of the wall from which the setback is made and shall connect with an enclosed fire passageway which shall extend to the street at the front of the building. The minimum width of a fire terrace shall be 8 feet.

B 211-3 (720.3)

Stairways

B 211-3.1 (720.3a)

General Requirements

a—At least one stairway shall continue to the roof in buildings three or more stories in height and having not more than 3 stairways, except where the slope of the roof exceeds 15 degrees. In such buildings having more than 3 stairways, at least two stairways shall continue to the roof. Stairways which do not continue to the roof shall be connected at the top story by corridors to the stairways which do continue to the roof or to each other.

b—Access to the roof by scuttle and ladder shall be provided for a building two stories in height, where the roof is not accessible by a stairway, and where the slope of the roof is 15 degrees or less.

c—Roofs of buildings three or more stories high, with a slope of less than 15 degrees, which are accessible from stairways, fire escapes, or ramps, shall be protected with a parapet wall or railing not less than 3 feet in height.

d—Stairways which serve as a required exit from any story shall be so arranged, and of such size, construction, and

Space Requirements

materials that they will provide safe ascent and descent. They shall terminate at street level and be connected to a street, or a fire terrace or other legal open space, and they shall conform to all requirements of this section and table B 211-3. In buildings three or more stories in height, such stairways shall be enclosed to provide continuous passage from the highest landing to a landing at grade level without leaving the stairway enclosure.

e—Noncombustible stairs, at least 22 inches wide, having an inclination of not more than 60 degrees to the horizontal, are permitted as exits from open mechanized parking structures not exceeding eight parking levels in height where no persons other than employees are permitted above the grade-level story. Such stairs shall extend continuously from the street parking level to the roof with an unobstructed landing at each parking level; open sides shall be guarded with substantially constructed screened enclosures or railings at least 36 inches high; floor openings shall be protected with adequate railings; handrails shall conform to the requirements of table B 211-3.

TABLE B 211-3. (I-720)—DIMENSION REQUIREMENTS FOR EXIT STAIRS,¹ HANDRAILS, AND GUARDRAILS

Component	Minimum			Maximum		
	Height	Length	Width	Height	Length	Width
Vertical rise of any run of stairs				12 ft.		
Headroom over landing floors and tread nosing	7 ft.		36 in. ³			
Stairway			36 in. ²			
Terminal and intermediate landing		36 in. ³	9½ in.	7¾ in.		
Tread exclusive of nosing ²		36 in. ³				
Riser ²						
Handrail						
Top above landing floor	33 in.			36 in.		
Top above tread nosing	30 in.			36 in.		
Projection from finished wall						3½ in.
Clearance to finished wall			1½ in.			
Guardrail						
Top above landing floor	33 in.					
Top above tread nosing	30 in.					
Openings in				48 in.	6 in.	

1. For required minimum width, see section B 211-11.

2. The product obtained by multiplying height of riser by width of tread shall be not less than 70 nor more than 77½.

3. 44 inches in hotels and in group B2 occupancies. For landings see paragraph f of this section.

Space Requirements

f—Terminal and intermediate landings shall be at the same level as the floor of any story from which doors are provided for entrance or departure to stairways. Such landings shall be at least 6 inches wider than any door opening upon them and at least 42 inches wide, but in no event less than the width of the stairway of which they are a part. There shall be a clearance of at least 22 inches from the edge of a door to any obstruction at any point in the arc of its swing. Door saddles, if any, shall not be more than $\frac{3}{4}$ -inch high and their top edges shall be beveled or rounded.

g—A unit of width for stairways shall be 22 inches. Credit for fractions of units shall not be allowed except that a credit of one-half unit shall be allowed for 12 inches of clear width added to one or more 22-inch units of width. The capacity of stairways shall be in accordance with table B 211-7b, except that where the story height exceeds 10 feet, the tabulated number of persons per 22-inch unit may be increased by one for each 16 inches of height in excess of 10 feet, plus one person additional for each 5 square feet of unobstructed floor space on the landings within the stair enclosure. The depth of landings and platforms shall be equal to the width of the stairs. The stairway capacity may be increased by 100 per cent and the door capacity by 50 per cent where the entire building is equipped with a sprinkler system that is not otherwise required. No exit stairway shall exceed 132 inches in width.

h—Stair treads, risers, stringers and landings shall be solid. Treads shall be set level and true, and top surfaces shall not vary more than $\frac{1}{8}$ -inch in any run. Risers shall not vary more than $\frac{1}{8}$ -inch in height in any run.

i—Stairs or steps shall have not less than three risers, except as provided in section B 211-4.1f. Such stairs or steps shall have a guardrail on the open side, or a screened enclosure as set forth in section B 211-3.3b.

j—Stairs less than 44 inches in width shall be provided with a handrail on at least one side, and if 44 inches or more in width, on both sides. If stairways are 88 inches or more in width, they shall also be provided with intermediate handrails spaced not more than 66 inches on center.

k—All landings shall be provided with guardrails on their open sides.

l—Handrails shall be started at the first tread both top and bottom and shall have no obstruction on or above them tend-

Space Requirements

ing to break a handhold, and the ends of handrails shall be returned to the wall or newel post.

m—Not more than two required stairways shall discharge through a common passageway or lobby on the grade-level story to each street.

n—No winders shall be permitted in required stairways.

o—Where the only exit from a dwelling unit is a door opening directly into a stairway which connects to a corridor, such stairway shall conform to the requirements of sections B 211-1, B 211-3.1f, h, i, j, l, n and the following:

- 1) Stairway shall have a minimum width of 36 inches.
- 2) Stairway shall be enclosed in construction having the same fire-resistance rating as the corridor.
- 3) Stairway shall have no openings to interior spaces other than those required for entrance to a dwelling unit and to the corridor, and these openings shall be equipped with self-closing opening protectives.
- 4) The travel distance along such stairway shall be considered to be from a dead end as set forth in section B 211-1j.

B 211-3.2 Interior Stairways

(720.3b)

a—Stair treads, risers and landings shall be solid, except that stairs from boiler, engine or mechanical equipment rooms, or from buildings or structures without enclosing walls, may have perforations or openings not exceeding ½-inch in lesser dimension.

b—Stairs, treads, risers and landings shall be constructed of noncombustible material, except in buildings of type 4 or 5 construction, two stories or less in height.

B 211-3.3 Exterior Stairways

(720.3c)

a—Exterior stairways shall terminate in a legal open space, with access to a street. No part of an exterior stairway shall be within 5 feet of any interior lot line.

b—Access to exterior stairways from any floor area shall be through exit doors at floor level, and the platform on which the door opens shall not be less than 4 inches nor more than 7¾ inches below the floor level, or the door shall open on a landing having the same level as the floor of that story, where means are provided to prevent accumulation of snow and ice on the landing. Perforations or openings not exceeding

Space Requirements

½ inch in lesser dimension, are permitted in treads, landings and platforms. In buildings three or more stories high, open sides of exterior stairways shall be protected with substantially constructed noncombustible screened enclosures at least 48 inches high. Adjacent wall openings shall be protected in conformity with section B 401-4.1.

c—Exterior stairways on buildings of type 4 or 5 construction, not more than two stories high, may be constructed of wood provided bearing and supporting members are not less than 4 inches, and all other members are not less than 2 inches in their least dimension. Balconies and platforms shall be securely attached to a wall or supported by columns. Treads and risers shall be as set forth in table B 211-3.

d—The platforms and landings shall be guarded by railings, and the stairs by handrails, conforming to the requirements of table B 211-3.

e—Construction shall be in conformity with generally accepted standards.

f—Exterior stairways and landings on buildings more than two stories in height, shall be protected with suitable overhead noncombustible construction.

B 211-3.4 Escalators (720.3d)

a—Escalators operating in the direction of exit travel, and escalators operating in the direction opposite to that of exit travel which are equipped at the head of each flight with a readily accessible device for stopping all flights simultaneously, shall be permitted as an alternative to one required means of egress in buildings not exceeding five stories in height, if enclosed in conformity with the requirements of section B 402-4.4.

b—Escalators shall be installed in conformity with section B 511. The minimum width measured between balustrading at a vertical height of 27 inches above the nose line of the treads, shall not be less than 42 inches, which shall be considered as two units of exit width. The depth of the step tread in the direction of travel shall be not less than 15¾ inches, and the rise between treads shall not exceed 8½ inches. Landings shall be provided similar to those required for stairways.

c—No continuous rise shall be more than two stories or 40 feet.

Space Requirements

d—The capacity of escalators used as exits shall be determined as for exit stairways.

B 211-3.5 Elevators

(720.3e) Elevators shall not be in a common enclosing shaft with a stairway.

B 211-4 Doors and Doorways

(720.4)

B 211-4.1 General Requirements

(720.4a)

a—Doors in required exits shall swing outward in the direction of exit travel, except that in buildings of group B1 occupancy containing not more than 20 dwelling units, and having no mixed or accessory occupancy, the street entrance and vestibule doors may swing inward. Doors from dwelling units or sleeping rooms may swing inward. Doors on stairways shall not have openings therein. Doors on a corridor shall not have openings therein, nor shall transoms above such doors be permitted except that louvers and transoms are permitted in doors of toilet rooms and sink closets.

¹⁹⁸⁰ b—Exit doors from any floor area or occupied space shall be readily openable, shall be arranged so that they can not be locked against exit from such area or space, and shall be equipped with self-closing and other necessary devices which will maintain them in a normally closed position, or such doors may be maintained in an open position provided they are equipped with means for both manual and automatic release. For automatic release, a smoke detector shall be provided near each such opening protective on the occupied side, and release shall be actuated as set forth in section B 510-7.

c—No swing-type exit door shall be more than 44 inches in width, nor less than that set forth in table B 211-4.1. Each unit of width for doorways shall be 22 inches, and credit for fractions of units shall not be allowed, except that a credit of one-half unit shall be allowed for 12 inches of clear width added to one or more 22-inch units in an opening. A 40-inch door shall be accepted as two units. Where a doorway is divided into two or more separate door openings, each such opening shall be measured separately in computing the number of units of exit width.

d—The total width of exit doorways or openings shall be not less than required to provide for the total number of persons served by such exit doorways or openings, as determined in

Space Requirements

TABLE B 211-4.1. (II-720)—MINIMUM WIDTH OF EXIT DOORS¹

Location	Minimum width of doors in inches in spaces or buildings of below-listed occupancy	
	B1 and B3 except hotels	B2 and hotels
From an occupied space other than habitable, and having 2 exits	28	28
From an occupied space where 1 exit is permitted	36	36
From a corridor to an enclosed stairway	36	40 ²
From a stairway to a door discharging to grade level or exterior	36	44 ²
From an assembly space, capacity less than 300 persons	36	44 ²
From an assembly space requiring double doors, each leaf	30	30
From an occupied space having an area not exceeding 150 square feet intended for no more than 2 occupants	28	28
From a corridor through a fire wall crossing the corridor	36	44
From a dwelling unit or a sleeping room through a fire wall where 1 exit is permitted	36	40
From a dwelling unit or a sleeping room through a fire wall, where 2 exits are provided; each exit	28	28
From the main exit of a building to the exterior	36 ²	44 ²
From the emergency exit from a boiler room	22	22
From a boiler room having one exit	36	36
Through a doorway having double doors, except assembly space; each leaf	24	24
Doors, required for physically handicapped (clear opening)	32	32
Through an overhead garage door (wicket type)	28	28

1. Where a space falls into more than one group occupancy, the larger door width shall be provided.

2. Minimum door width of 30 inches is permitted where there is more than one door in a doorway.

accordance with section B 211-7. The total width of exit doorways or openings, through which an exit stairway discharges, shall be at least equal to the width of that stairway.

e—No doorway shall be less than 6 feet 8 inches in height.

f—A grade-story main exit door to the exterior shall open on a level grade, or a landing not less in depth than the swing of the door, extending at least 12 inches beyond each side of the door jamb. Such grade or landing shall be not less than 4 inches nor more than 7 3/4 inches below the level of the door sill. A landing shall be provided at other than a main entrance, and shall be at least one riser above the adjoining grade.

g—Grade-level exit doors from required stairways and passageways shall be hung to swing without obstructing the required width of exit passage. In assembly space, the main entrance doors shall not be considered as more than one half of the required exit width.

h—Exit doors from assembly space shall be equipped with

Space Requirements

fire exit bolts which release when pressure is applied to the releasing devices. Such releasing devices shall be bars or panels extending not less than two thirds the width of the door, shall be placed not less than 30 inches nor more than 44 inches above the floor, and shall clearly indicate the latch or push side of the door. Where exit from such assembly space leads to exits from dwelling units, main entrance doors of the building shall be provided with fire exit bolts. Fire exit bolts are not required on doors without spring latches and which are unlocked when the space is occupied.

B 211-4.2 **Revolving Doors** **(720.4b)**

a—Not more than 50 per cent of the required exit doors may consist of revolving doors, and there shall be at least one swinging door within 20 feet of each revolving door.

b—Wings of revolving doors shall be released by ordinary body pressure so that they shall readily fold back independently. The clear width of the resulting opening on each side shall be not less than 22 inches.

c—The capacity of revolving doors shall be computed from table B 211-7b on the basis of the minimum width of opening with the wings folded back.

d—Revolving doors shall not be permitted as a required exit from any building of group B2 occupancy.

B 211-5 **Exit Enclosures** **(720.5)**

a—Stairways from an open mezzanine, balcony, or other open tier above the main floor, or from buildings or structures without enclosing walls, are not required to be enclosed.

b—No openings shall be permitted in stairway enclosures except the required doors for entrance or exit as set forth in section B 211-1d, windows in exterior walls, and window or skylight at roof.

c—Exits from upper stories shall be enclosed to the exterior of the building with construction which complies with the requirements set forth in table B 202-2. A lobby may be part of such enclosure provided it also meets such requirements and provided it is separated by fire separations and opening protectives from rooms or spaces in which there are combustible contents, in accordance with section B 402-1b and section B 402-4.1.

d—Where a required exit stairway serving the upper stories of a building is continued in the same enclosure to one

Space Requirements

or more stories below the main floor, the portion of the stairway above the main floor shall be separated from the portion of the stairway below the main floor by an enclosure in conformity with section B 402-4.4. An unenclosed stairway from a mezzanine, balcony or other open tier above the main floor shall not continue to a space below exit discharge at grade level without effective provision being made by change in direction of the run of the stairs, or by separation, so as to make clear the direction of egress to the street and prevent unintentional travel below such exit level.

e—Where a stairway enclosure follows the rake of the stairs, the soffit shall be protected by construction at least equivalent in protection to that of the stairway enclosure.

f—A basement or cellar stairway from the first story of a multiple dwelling shall be enclosed, and the door openings at the top and bottom of such stairs shall be equipped with opening protectives.

B 211-6 (720.6)

Distance of Travel to, and Location of, Exits

a—Exits shall be independent of, and as remote from each other as is practicable, and shall be readily accessible to occupants of the building.

b—Exits shall be so located that the maximum distance of travel shall not exceed the distances shown in table B 211-6.

B 211-7 (720.70)

735.9

Determination of Required Widths, Number, and Types of Exit

a—Exits shall be provided in conformity with the requirements of section B 211-1. Every space and subdivision including a dwelling unit, fire area, story, mezzanine or roof, occupied or customarily used by persons, shall be provided with at least two exits except as set forth in section B 211-8, and except that where a story has no exit corridor an exit from that story is not required; the exit from a space on a story that has no exit corridor shall be an exit corridor on the next higher or lower story. The width, number and type of exits shall be determined in accordance with the following procedure:

¹⁹⁷⁷ **First**, using table B 211-7a, divide the gross floor area within the inside perimeter of the space by the applicable floor area per person to determine the number of persons for which exits are to be provided; where the proposed number of persons will be more than that

Space Requirements

TABLE B 211-6. (III-720)—MAXIMUM DISTANCE OF TRAVEL TO EXITS²

Construction classification			Distance in feet	
			B1	B2 & B3
All types	From a door of a room within a dwelling unit	To entrance door of the dwelling unit ¹	50	50
All types	From any point in an assembly space	To entrance door of assembly space	75	75
All types	From entrance door of an assembly space above or below grade	To door opening into an exit stairway	75	75
All types	From entrance door of an assembly space at grade	To an exit door opening at grade level to legal open space	75	75
All types	From door of a nonhabitable space in a below-grade story or level	To a door opening into an exit stairway, legal open space or horizontal exit	75	75
All types	From any point in a garage	To a door opening into an exit stairway, legal open space or horizontal exit	75	75
Type 3, 4 and 5	From entrance door of an above-grade dwelling unit or sleeping room	To a door opening into an exit stairway ¹	50	40
Type 3, 4 and 5	From entrance door of a grade-level dwelling unit or sleeping room	To a door opening at grade level to a legal open space	50	40
Type 1 and 2	From entrance door of an above-grade dwelling unit or sleeping room	To a door opening into an exit stairway	100	75
Type 1 and 2	From entrance door of a grade-level dwelling unit or sleeping room	To a door opening at grade level to a legal open space	100	75

1. Exits from dwelling units occupying part of not more than two stories may be from either story.

2. In sprinklered buildings, where the sprinkler system is not required, the maximum distance shall be increased by 50 per cent; and where the sprinkler system is required, the maximum distance shall be increased by 25 per cent.

Space Requirements

computed by using table B 211-7a, exits shall be provided for the larger number; and where an exit from a mezzanine discharges through the floor below, the floor area of the mezzanine shall be added to the area of the main floor for the purpose of determining the number of persons for which exits are to be provided;

Second, using table B 211-7b, obtain the required total width of exits, the discharge capacity of which is not less than that for the number of persons for which exits are to be provided;

Third, using table B 211-6 and section B 211-8, determine the minimum number of exits required; and,

Fourth, establish the types of exits as set forth in paragraph b and c of this section.

b—The number of exits required shall consist of enclosed stairways, with the following alternatives permitted where two or more enclosed stairways are required:

In buildings of group B1 occupancy not exceeding six stories or 70 feet in height, one exterior stairway shall be permitted in lieu of one enclosed exit stairway.

In buildings of group B1 occupancy not exceeding two stories or 30 feet in height, required exit stairways may be exterior stairways as set forth in section B 211-3.3.

One horizontal exit in conformity with section B 211-2f, shall be permitted in lieu of one enclosed stairway. Horizontal exits shall not be in excess of one half the total required number of exits from any one fire area.

One ramp in conformity with section B 211-2d shall be permitted in lieu of one enclosed stairway.

c—Areas occupied by bedridden patients which exceed 3000 square feet, in buildings of type 2b, 3 or 4 construction, shall be provided with a horizontal exit, or a ramp, or other required exit directly to grade level at exterior. There shall be no steps in such exits.

d—Where one exit is permitted for buildings not more than two stories in height, there shall be provided openings for emergency use in addition to the primary exit from a habitable space, except kitchens. Such openings shall include doors or windows, located so as to provide unobstructed egress to legal open space. Such window openings shall be openable from the inside without the use of tools, shall have a minimum area of 4 square feet, with a minimum dimension of 18 inches,

Space Requirements

with bottom of opening no higher than 3 feet 6 inches, nor lower than 18 inches above finished floor in all above-grade stories, and no higher than 4 feet 6 inches where required in a basement.

e—In a two story building of group B1 occupancy, an exterior balcony having at least two exterior stairways is permitted as the only exit under the following conditions:

- 1) Exterior balcony shall have no dead ends.
- 2) Balcony and stairway shall be constructed of heavy timber or noncombustible materials.
- 3) Exits from interior spaces shall open directly onto such balcony.
- 4) Width of such balcony shall be at least 5 feet.

**TABLE B 211-7a. (IV-720)—FLOOR AREA PER PERSON
In square feet**

Occupancy	Below-grade floor areas	First-story floor areas	Floor areas above first floor
Habitable space			
Group B1 and B3	200	125	125
Group B2	200	100	75
Public space			
Dining rooms	10	10	10
Lecture rooms, auditoriums	6	6	6
Gymnasiums	15	15	15
Recreation rooms	40	40	40
Nonhabitable space			
Storage	300	300	300
Motor vehicle garage on same premises with or in a multiple dwelling	300	300	300
Service	100	100	100

**TABLE B 211-7b (V-720)—CAPACITY OF STAIRWAYS AND DOORS
In number of persons per 22-inch unit of exit width**

Occupancy	Unsprinklered buildings		Sprinklered buildings	
	Stairs ¹	Doors	Stairs ¹	Doors
B1	50	80	100	120
B2	—	—	60	75
B3	40	60	80	90

1. For increased capacity when story height exceeds 10 feet, see section B 211-3.1g.

735.10

B 211-8
(720.8)

Space Requirements

Where One Exit is Permitted

Not more than one exit is required in the following locations provided the maximum distance of travel to exits as set forth in table B 211-6 is not exceeded:

- 1) Building of group B1 occupancy one story in height.
- ¹⁹⁸⁰ 2) Building of group B1 occupancy two stories in height, where there is in each habitable space access to an opening as set forth in section B 211-7d, having a sill not more than 14 feet above grade directly below which is level and unobstructed ground for at least 10 feet from the exterior wall provided that:
 - (a) the exit from the second story is an interior stairway leading directly to the exterior having no more than one opening to a corridor on each story and passage from a corridor on one level having habitable space to another level having habitable space shall be through at least two opening protectives; or
 - (b) there is an exterior stairway conforming to the requirements set forth in section B 211-3.3; or
 - (c) the exit from the second story is an interior stairway with no openings to other parts of the building; or
 - (d) the interior exit is enclosed with construction having a fire resistance rating of at least 1 hour with openings to not more than 4 dwelling units on each of the two stories, a special sprinkler installation conforming to requirements of section B 510-4.7e is provided within each dwelling unit with at least one sprinkler head located on or near the ceiling adjacent to the exit door, and a single-station smoke detecting alarm device is installed at the top of the stair.
- 3) Dwelling unit, including a dwelling unit occupying not more than two stories.
- 4) Sleeping room; and storage or service room less than 1000 square feet in floor area except as set forth in section B 211-10.
- ¹⁹⁷³ 5) Fire area where subdivided into dwelling units, sleeping rooms or rooms for transient occupancy, where exit from fire area is the door from such dwelling unit, sleeping room or room.

Space Requirements

- 6) Cellar or basement less than 2000 square feet in floor area and without habitable space or public space located therein; not applicable to areas in sub-cellars.
- 7) Public space less than 500 square feet in floor area.
- 8) Above-grade garages of 5000 square feet or less in floor area.
- 9) Mechanical equipment and boiler rooms not more than 300 square feet in area, housing low pressure boilers or housing high pressure boilers having a rated gross capacity of not more than 40,000 Btu per hour.
- 10) A mezzanine not more than 2000 square feet in area and with no dimension greater than 50 feet; except that in assembly spaces, such area shall be not more than 500 square feet.

**B 212
(721)**

GARAGES AND OPEN PARKING STRUCTURES ON THE SAME PREMISES WITH A MULTIPLE DWELLING

**B 212-1
(721.1)**

General Requirements

a—Motor vehicles may be parked or stored in the open upon the premises, but no vehicle may be parked or stored nearer than 5 feet from an opening in a noncombustible wall which is equipped with an opening protective, or nearer than 10 feet from a combustible wall or from an opening in a noncombustible wall which is not equipped with an opening protective.

b—A garage or open parking structure may be on the same premises with a multiple dwelling, provided it complies with the requirements of this Code. Such garages or open parking structures shall be primarily for the storage or parking of passenger motor vehicles. Washing and polishing of such motor vehicles shall be permitted.

c—Garages shall be arranged and constructed so that flammable vapors cannot spread to fixed sources of ignition or be transmitted through the heating or ventilating system to the multiple dwelling. Floors and decks shall be constructed of noncombustible materials that will not absorb flammable liquids, and each parking deck upon which vehicles are stored shall be pitched for drainage.

d—An above-grade garage space or open parking structure with a floor area of more than 5000 square feet shall be provided with at least two exits; where located below-grade

Space Requirements

and the floor area exceeds 2000 square feet, at least two exits are required. Pass-through doors shall conform to section B 211-4 with bottom of doors not more than 12 inches above floor level.

e—Where two or more exits are required, an automobile ramp connecting not more than 3 parking levels is permitted as one of the exits.

f—Ramps for vehicles shall not have a gradient of more than 1 in 7 and their surfaces shall be nonslip. Ramps leading to a street shall terminate not less than 20 feet from such street.

g—Roof decks used for parking or storage and the open sides of parking decks shall be protected with curbs, railings and bumper blocks as set forth in section B 304-9.

h—Central heating equipment for a garage shall be separated as required in section B 402-4.6d, and all heating equipment installed in such garage shall comply with the requirements of section B 504-2.13.

i—Garage areas in excess of 1000 square feet shall be provided with mechanical ventilation in conformity with section B 508-3.

j—Garages shall be provided with fire protection equipment in conformity with section B 406.

k—Garage areas shall be provided with electric light in conformity with section B 507-2.1b, in addition to any natural light.

l—Enclosure walls shall not be required on open parking structures except on sides located within 10 feet of an interior lot line. No temporary enclosures of combustible material shall be used where enclosure walls are omitted. Parking or storage shall not be permitted in a story more than 4 feet below the curb level unless that story or parking level is of type 1 construction.

B 212-2 (721.2)

Garages Within Multiple Dwellings

a—Garages within a multiple dwelling shall be separated from the multiple dwelling by fire separations as set forth in section B 402-4.7.

b—Access between a multiple dwelling and a garage within the multiple dwelling shall be permitted as set forth in section B 402-4.7.

Space Requirements

c—The sale, storage, or handling of gasoline or other flammable liquids and the repair and refinishing of motor vehicles shall be prohibited.

B 212-3 (721.3) Garages and Open Parking Structures Attached to Multiple Dwellings

a—Garages and open parking structures which are attached to, or structurally integrated with, a multiple dwelling shall be separated from the multiple dwelling by fire separations as set forth in section B 402-4.7.

b—Access between a multiple dwelling and a garage or open parking structure attached to the multiple dwelling shall be permitted as set forth in section B 402-4.7.

B 212-4 (721.4) Garages and Open Parking Structures on Premises of Multiple Dwellings

A garage or open parking structure on the same premises with a multiple dwelling, but not attached, shall be separated from the multiple dwelling by distance or construction as set forth in section B 401-3.

B 213 (722) PROJECTION BEYOND THE STREET LINE

B 213-1 (722.1) General Requirements

a—No part of any building or structure shall project beyond the street line so as to encroach upon a public street or space, unless specifically permitted by the municipality.

b—Any part of a building, or sign attached thereto, projecting beyond the street line, shall be constructed so that it can be removed at any time upon demand by the municipality without causing the building to become structurally unsafe.

B 213-2 (722.2) Marquees

Marquees, where permitted, shall be not less than 10 feet above the curb level at any point, shall be constructed of non-combustible materials, shall be securely supported from the building construction, and shall be properly drained.

B 214 (723) FACILITIES FOR THE PHYSICALLY HANDICAPPED

B 214-1 (723.1) General Requirements

a—For the purpose of this section, facilities for the

Space Requirements

physically handicapped shall include plumbing, heating, electrical, ventilating, air conditioning, refrigerating equipment, elevators, dumbwaiters, escalators, walks, ramps, parking space, floor surfaces, water fountains, telephones, door hardware and other fixtures and elements affecting the functional use of buildings by the physically handicapped.

b—Buildings set forth in table B 214-1a shall be equipped with facilities to provide access and a safe environment for the physically handicapped. Cumulative gross floor area shall be the sum of the gross areas of all floor levels of one or more buildings of the same occupancy on the same premises.

TABLE B 214-1a. (I-723)—BUILDINGS THAT REQUIRE FACILITIES FOR THE PHYSICALLY HANDICAPPED

Occupancy group	Where the cumulative gross floor area exceeds:
B1 — permanent	40,000 square feet
B1 — transient	20,000 square feet
B2 — permanent or transient	Required in all cases

c—The provisions of this section shall be supplemental to, and take precedence over other less restrictive provisions of this Code.

d—The number of dwelling units and sleeping rooms that are required to be equipped with facilities for the physically handicapped shall be as set forth in table B 214-1b.

TABLE B 214-1b. (II-723)—NUMBER OF DWELLING UNITS AND SLEEPING ROOMS THAT REQUIRE FACILITIES FOR THE PHYSICALLY HANDICAPPED¹

Occupancy group	Number
B1 — permanent	2 dwelling units or 2 per cent of the total number of dwelling units, whichever is larger.
B1 — transient	2 sleeping rooms for transient occupancy or 2 per cent of the total number of such rooms, whichever is larger.
B2 — permanent or transient	One sleeping room or 10 per cent of the total number of sleeping rooms, whichever is larger.

¹Where determination by per cent results in a number containing a decimal of .5 or more, use the next higher number.

Space Requirements

B 214-2 **Path of Travel** **(733.2)**

B 214-2.1 **General Requirements** **(723.2a)**

a—There shall be at least one path of travel consisting of walks, ramps, lobbies, elevators or passageways, or a necessary combination thereof, that provides free and unobstructed access to, and exit from the building. Path of travel shall extend from a public or private roadway, or from an automobile parking space reserved for use by the physically handicapped.

b—The distance along the path of travel from a public or private roadway or from an automobile parking space reserved for use by the physically handicapped, to a building entrance door shall not exceed 200 feet.

c—Path of travel shall have a durable, finished surface. Steps or abrupt changes in level are not permitted.

d—Where accessory public and recreational spaces such as dining rooms, meeting rooms, gymnasiums, or auditoriums are provided on the premises, the path of travel shall extend to the entrances of such spaces. Where public toilet rooms or public drinking fountains are provided for accessory public and recreational spaces, the path of travel shall include at least one public toilet room for each sex and one public drinking fountain.

e—Where laundry rooms or refuse disposal locations are provided on the premises, the path of travel shall also extend from each dwelling unit equipped with facilities for the physically handicapped to at least one laundry room and one refuse disposal location, except where laundry facilities are located within the dwelling unit as set forth in section B 502-6f, the path of travel shall not be required to extend to a general laundry room.

f—Guardrails at least 32 inches in height shall be provided at the sides of the path of travel where the adjoining surface drops more than 12 inches within three feet thereof. One dimension of opening in guardrail shall not exceed 6 inches.

g—Path of travel shall be provided with artificial light as set forth in section B 507-2.1b.

B 214-2.2 **Walks** **(723.2b)**

a—Walks shall have a width of at least 48 inches.

b—Gradient of walks shall not exceed 1 in 20. Where the

Space Requirements

gradient exceeds 1 in 20, the path shall be classified as a ramp.

B 214-2.3 (723.2c) Ramps

a—For buildings of group B1 permanent occupancy, ramps shall have a width of at least 36 inches provided the minimum clearance between handrails is 36 inches. For buildings of group B1 transient occupancy and B2 occupancy, ramps shall have a width of at least 48 inches, except that 36 inches is permitted where ramps and adjoining steps connect the same levels.

b—Ramps shall have a non-skid surface and a gradient not exceeding 1 in 12.

c—At each end of a ramp and at a door opening on a ramp, there shall be a level landing at least 4 feet long.

d—Intermediate level landings at least 4 feet long shall be provided so that the sloping portion of the ramp between landings shall have a length not exceeding $2\frac{1}{2}$ times the inverse of the gradient expressed in feet.

e—A level landing, with a minimum linear dimension of 4 feet, shall be provided wherever a sharp change in direction occurs in a ramp.

f—Where a door opens on a landing, there shall be a level area having a minimum dimension of 4 feet and extending at least one foot beyond the jamb on the latch side. The door shall not decrease the required dimension of a landing for any arc of its swing.

g—Ramps shall have handrails 32 inches high on both sides. Handrails shall extend at least one foot beyond the top and bottom of the ramp. Handrail extensions shall be designed so that they do not constitute a hazard.

1980

B 214-2.4 (723.2d) Elevators

a—Where the path of travel includes an elevator, at least one elevator shall conform to the requirements of this section and such elevator shall be identifiable to persons who are physically handicapped.

b—Elevator cars shall have a clear inside depth of not less than 51 inches. An unobstructed area at least 4 feet by 5 feet shall be provided in front of the elevator door on the entrance story.

Space Requirements

c—Horizontal handrails shall be secured to at least two walls of the car, and located no higher than 32 inches above the car platform.

B 214-3 (723.3)

Parking Spaces

a—Where parking facilities are provided, at least two parking spaces or two per cent of the total number of parking spaces, whichever is greater, shall be reserved for the physically handicapped, except that no facilities for the physically handicapped are required where the cumulative parking area is less than 2000 square feet.

b—Parking spaces shall be at least 10 feet wide, except that a parking space adjoining a walkway shall be at least 9 feet wide.

c—Parking spaces shall be related to the path of travel so that the physically handicapped need not wheel or walk behind other parked cars, and so that the path of travel within the parking area is a minimum.

B 214-4 (723.4)

Doors within the Path of Travel and

Doors in Spaces Required to be

Accessible to the Physically Handicapped

a—Doors shall be of the single-swing or sliding type. Self-closing devices on doors, and power-operated and power-assisted doors under conditions of power failure, shall have a maximum closing tension of 8 pounds.

b—Single doors shall provide a clear opening at least 32 inches in width. Double doors shall provide a clear opening at least 32 inches in width with one leaf open.

c—In vestibules, the clearance between the arcs of door swings shall be at least 4 feet.

d—Door handles shall be not more than 42 inches above the floor and shall be of a type having a horizontal lever, a square or knurled knob, or otherwise arranged to permit easy operation.

e—Thresholds shall be beveled and shall not exceed three quarters of an inch in height, except that for B2 occupancies, thresholds, if any, shall be flush.

f—Doors opening into hazardous areas from the path of travel, shall be equipped with door handles that are iden-

Space Requirements

tifiable to visually handicapped persons as opening into hazardous areas.

B 214-5 (723.5) Dwelling Units and Rooms for Transient Occupancy

B 214-5.1 (723.5a) General Requirements

Dwelling units and rooms for transient occupancy intended for use by the physically handicapped shall be arranged so as to provide convenient access to all parts of such spaces to permit the maximum use for living and working.

B 214-5.2 (723.5b) Toilet and Bath Facilities

Plumbing fixtures of a type as set forth in section B 214-7 shall be provided as in table B 214-5.2.

TABLE B 214-5.2 (III-723)—REQUIRED NUMBER OF TOILET AND BATH FACILITIES

Occupancy group	Plumbing fixtures
B1 — permanent	A water closet, a lavatory, and a shower stall or bathtub in each dwelling unit required as per section B 214-1d.
B1 — transient, with private toilet and bath facilities	A water closet, a lavatory, and a shower stall or bathtub for each sleeping room required as per section B 214-1d.
B1 — transient, with semi-private or central toilet and bath facilities	A water closet and a lavatory for each multiple of two sleeping rooms, and a shower stall or bathtub for each multiple of six sleeping rooms, or fraction thereof, required as per section B 214-1d.
B2 — permanent or transient, with semi-private or central toilet and bath facilities	A water closet and a lavatory for each multiple of two sleeping rooms, and a shower stall or bathtub for each multiple of six sleeping rooms, or fraction thereof, required as per section B 214-1d.

B 214-5.3 (723.5c) Heating Equipment

Heating equipment shall be capable of maintaining an indoor temperature of at least 75°F.

Space Requirements

B 214-5.4 Cooking Equipment

(723.5d)

a—Cooking equipment of the electric type shall be equipped with a lamp or lamps that will light automatically when a burner is in operation.

b—Cooking equipment of the gas type shall be equipped with pilot lights for the top burner and for the oven. An automatic device shall shut off the oven gas supply in the event of pilot outage.

c—Controls on cooking equipment shall be located so that they can be operated without reaching over or between burners.

B 214-5.5 Electrical Equipment

(723.5e)

a—Receptacles shall be located at least 24 inches above the floor.

b—Where the length of a passageway within a dwelling unit exceeds 15 feet, the lighting fixtures in the passageway shall be controlled by switches of the three-way type.

B 214-6 Plumbing Facilities for Accessory Public

(723.6)

and Recreational Spaces

a—Where public toilet rooms are provided and the path of travel extends thereto, one toilet room for each sex shall contain at least one water closet and one lavatory of a type as set forth in section B 214-7.

b—Where public drinking fountains are provided and the path of travel extends thereto, at least one drinking fountain shall be of a type as set forth in section B 214-7.

B 214-7 Usability of Plumbing Fixtures

(723.7)

a—Adequate clear floor space shall be provided for access to, and safe use of, plumbing fixtures for the physically handicapped. A clear floor space of at least 5 feet by 5 feet shall be available for turning a wheelchair in general toilet rooms, general bathrooms, and general laundry rooms equipped with fixtures for the physically handicapped.

b—Faucet and operating levers at plumbing fixtures for the physically handicapped shall be of wristblade or other suitable type not requiring the use of the hand for operation. Self-closing lavatory faucets shall be prohibited.

c—Where water closets for the physically handicapped are

Space Requirements

installed in general toilet rooms, they shall be located in stalls at least 36 inches wide and 56 inches deep. Stall doors where provided, shall swing out and shall afford a clear opening at least 32 inches in width. Where stall doors are provided, the stalls shall be at least 66 inches deep. Where water closets for the physically handicapped in group B1 occupancy are provided in dwelling units or in general toilet rooms, a horizontal handrail or grab bar of adequate length and 1 1/4 inches in diameter shall be securely mounted 32 inches above the floor and conveniently located at one side of the water closet with at least 1 1/2 inches of clearance from walls. Where water closets for the physically handicapped in group B2 occupancy are provided, they shall be equipped with seats located 19 to 20 inches above the floor, and horizontal handrails of adequate length and at least 1 1/4 inches in diameter shall be securely mounted approximately 32 inches above the floor, on each side of the water closet, with at least 1 1/2 inches of clearance between handrails and adjacent walls.

d—Where provided for the physically handicapped, wall mounted and pedestal urinals shall be installed so that rim levels are no more than 21 inches above floor level; floor set stall urinals shall be installed so that rim level is no higher than the toilet room floor level.

e—Lavatories and kitchen sinks for the physically handicapped shall have at least 26 inches clearance between fixture bottom and floor for a depth of 10 inches so as to provide sufficient leg room, and the piping beneath the fixture shall be located or insulated so as to prevent injury to persons in wheelchairs.

f—Where bathtubs are provided for the physically handicapped, grab bars 1 1/4 inches in diameter shall be securely mounted on two adjacent walls of the tub or its enclosure, one bar installed horizontally 32 inches above the floor and the second bar installed vertically with its lower end at such height.

g—Shower stalls for the physically handicapped shall have non-slip type floors, adjustable type shower heads, and single-lever type mixing valves designed to maintain constant water temperature under variable water pressure and temperature conditions. Mixing valves shall be installed approximately 40 inches above the stall floor and shall be operable from inside and outside the stall by a user at the threshold. Where such shower stalls are provided in dwelling units of group B1 oc-

Space Requirements

cupancy, grab bars 1 1/4 inches in diameter shall be securely mounted on two adjacent walls of the stall, one bar installed horizontally 32 inches above the floor and the second bar installed vertically with its lower end 32 inches above the floor. Where central bath facilities are provided for group B1 occupancy, a shower stall for the physically handicapped shall have at least 9 square feet of floor area, with minimum horizontal dimension of 3 feet, and a curb not exceeding 2 inches in height at the stall entrance. Where central bath facilities are provided for group B2 occupancy, a shower stall for the physically handicapped shall have at least 16 square feet of floor area, with minimum horizontal dimension of 4 feet, and a threshold not exceeding one half inch in height at the stall entrance. Where such shower stalls are provided in central bath facilities for group B1 or B2 occupancy, they shall be equipped with a folding seat securely attached to a sidewall of the stall, opposite the mixing valve, and installed so that the top of the seat when in the lowered position shall be 19 to 20 inches above the stall floor. Horizontal handrails 1 1/4 inches in diameter shall be securely mounted 32 inches above the floor on the rear wall and on the wall opposite the seat. Handrails and grab bars shall provide at least 1 1/2 inches of clearance from walls.

h—Drinking fountains for the physically handicapped shall have jets located 31 to 33 inches above the floor and shall have basins projecting 8 inches to 12 inches from the front of the wall or cabinet on which they are mounted. Such drinking fountains shall have up-front jets and controls and shall be designed for hand operation or hand-and-foot operation.

i—Where laundry facilities for group B1 occupancy dwelling units occupied by the physically handicapped are provided in a general laundry room, at least one laundry machine therein shall be of the front-loading type equipped with a side-hinged front door and front-mounted controls.

B 214-8 (723.8)

Telephones

Where public telephones are provided on the premises, at least one public telephone shall be suitable for the physically handicapped.

Part 3

Structural Requirements

**B 301
(730)**

GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

a—Buildings and parts thereof shall be capable of sustaining safely their own weight and the loads to which they may be subject, as set forth in this part of this Code.

b—Buildings shall be constructed and integrated so that loads are transmitted to the soil without undue differential settlement, unsafe deformation or movement of the building or of any structural part.

c—Wherever structural material or assemblies are subject to deterioration and might become structurally unsound if unprotected, protection in conformity with general accepted standards for the material involved shall be provided. Causes of such deterioration include, among others, action of freezing and thawing, dampness, corrosion, wetting and drying, and termites and other destructive insects.

d—Crawl spaces and unheated concealed spaces below roofs shall be ventilated by openings so located and of such area as to minimize deterioration of the structural members from condensation or other causes, in conformity with generally accepted standards.

e—Buildings shall be constructed so that ground and surface water will not penetrate into habitable spaces, basements and cellars. Surface adjoining buildings shall be arranged so as to divert surface water away from the building.

f—Materials, assemblies, connections, fastenings and structural members to which they are attached, shall be structurally stable, with allowances made for differences in the expansion and contraction coefficients of connected materials in conformity with generally accepted standards for the material involved.

**B 302
(731)**

SOIL BEARING VALUE

**B 302-1
(731.1)**

General Requirements

The bearing value of the soil shall be determined in order that foundations may be proportioned so as to provide a minimum

Structural Requirements

of absolute and differential settlement. Soil or pile tests, presumptive bearing values of the soil, reduction factors for pile groups, and pile-driving formulas, referred to in this Code, shall be in conformity with generally accepted standards. When it can be conclusively proved that the presumptive soil bearing value is adequate for the proposed load, the enforcement officer may accept such proof in lieu of the determination prescribed in section B 302-2b.

B 302-2 (731.2)

Determination

a—For buildings in which the sum of the snow load and those live loads of all the floors which are transferred by columns or walls to the soil, divided by grade-floor area, is 200 psf or less, the allowable bearing value of the soil upon which the building rests shall be the presumptive bearing value, or shall be determined by field loading tests made in conformity with generally accepted standards.

b—For buildings in which the sum of the snow load and those live loads of all the floors which are transferred by columns or walls to the soil, divided by grade-floor area, exceeds 200 psf, there shall be a minimum of one test pit or boring for every 2500 square feet or part thereof of grade-floor building area, carried sufficiently into acceptable bearing material to establish its character and thickness. At least one boring for every 10,000 square feet or part thereof of building area shall be carried to a minimum depth below grade equal to the height of building but need not be carried more than 100 feet below grade, or to the minimum depth which shows 25 continuous feet of fine sand or better bearing material than fine sand, or 5 feet or bed rock, below the deepest proposed footing. A record of all borings made by core drill or spoon showing the foot-by-foot character of the soil, the ground water level, and the number of blows required for each foot of penetration of the spoon, shall be kept and certified by the architect or engineer in charge. The subsurface exploration apparatus including the size of spoon, weight and the drop shall be in conformity with generally accepted standards. Wash borings shall be deemed unacceptable. Boring samples taken at each significant change of soil strata and at 5-foot intervals thereafter shall be retained and made available to the enforcement officer. When in his opinion additional subsurface information is required because of the variable geology of the site, additional tests pits or borings shall be made.

Structural Requirements

c—For buildings referred to in section B 302-2b, when the building load is transferred to the soil by spread footings, the allowable bearing values of the successive layers of soil determined by test pits or borings shall be the presumptive bearing values and, if required by the enforcement officer, shall be substantiated by field loading soil tests made on undisturbed, natural soil at the level of the proposed foundation with fill, if any, removed.

d—For buildings referred to in section B 302-2b, when the building load is transferred to the soil through the medium of friction or bearing piles, the capacity of a pile group shall be the number of piles multiplied by the capacity of one pile and by a reduction factor for friction piles. The capacity of a pile shall be determined by either of the following methods or by an approved combination of them with a limit determined by the strength of the pile as a structural member:

A field loading pile test, one such pile test for each 15,000 square feet or part thereof of grade-floor building area, with a minimum of two test piles, or a generally accepted pile-driving formula.

B 302-3 (731.3)

Performance Criteria for Field Loading Soil Test

Under field loading soil test, the total settlement caused by the proposed load on the soil, measured after a period during which no settlement has occurred for 24 hours, shall not exceed $\frac{3}{4}$ -inch. The additional settlement caused by a 50 per cent increase in the proposed load, measured after a period during which no settlement has occurred for 24 hours, shall not exceed 60 per cent of the total settlement as previously measured under the proposed load.

B 302-4 (731.4)

Performance Criteria for Pile Test

a—The test load shall be twice the proposed pile load, applied in increments of one quarter of the proposed pile load, with readings of settlements taken to the nearest $\frac{1}{32}$ -inch and plotted against load. The test load may be increased to more than twice the proposed pile load value until the gross settlement is approximately 1 inch. At each step the load shall remain unchanged until there is no settlement in a 2-hour period, and the test load shall remain in place until there is no settlement in 48 hours.

b—The total test load shall then be removed in decrements

Structural Requirements

not exceeding one quarter of the total test load at intervals of not less than 1 hour, with rebound read after each removal of load and plotted against load and with the final rebound recorded 24 hours after removal of the last decrement. The allowable pile load shall be the lesser of one half of the load which caused:

A gross settlement of 1 inch, or

A net settlement (gross settlement minus total rebound) equal to 0.01 inch per ton times total test load in tons, with a limit determined by the strength of the pile as a structural member.

**B 303
(732)**

ALLOWABLE STRESSES OF MATERIALS

**B 303-1
(732.1)**

General Requirements

Safe working stresses shall be assigned to materials in accordance with their classification either as controlled materials or ordinary materials, and these stresses shall not be exceeded unless specifically permitted in section B 304-10.

**B 303-2
(732.2)**

Controlled Materials

Where controlled materials are identified and certified for quality and strength by a recognized authoritative inspection service, grading organization, or testing laboratory acceptable to make such tests, such materials shall conform to the specifications and stresses for controlled materials as set forth in generally accepted standards. When a material is formed and cast in the field, tests prior to the construction and during the construction shall be made, and the composition and strength of the material shall be certified by any of the above appropriate agencies or by the architect or engineer responsible for the design.

**B 303-3
(732.3)**

Ordinary Materials

Materials which do not conform to the requirements for controlled materials shall be considered ordinary materials, and their quality and safe working stresses shall conform to the specifications and stresses for ordinary materials in generally accepted standards. When quality and safe working stresses are not so specified, they shall be determined by test in conformity with section B 305. When a material is formed and

Structural Requirements

cast in the field, tests during the construction shall be made and its composition and strength certified by any of the appropriate agencies designated under section B 303-2, or by the architect or engineer responsible for the design.

**B 304
(733)**

DESIGN LOADS

**B 304-1
(733.1)**

General Requirements

A building and all parts thereof shall be of sufficient strength to support the design loads and to resist the deformations caused by such loads to which they may be subjected, without exceeding the allowable stresses as described in section B 305. Such loads shall include the dead load and the following imposed loads where applicable: live, snow, wind, soil pressure including surcharge, hydrostatic head, and impact loads.

**B 304-2
(733.2)**

Live Loads

**B 304-2.1
(733.2a)**

General

a—Loads set forth in table B 304-2.2 do not include unusual concentrations, such as but not limited to heavy machinery, equipment, water tanks, elevator machine loads, swimming pools, storage units, and floor-to-ceiling bookracks. Where such loads occur, suitable provisions shall be made for their support.

b—Where such unusual concentrations do not occur, structural members, and flooring spanning between the supporting structural members, shall be designed to support the uniformly distributed loads or the concentrated loads set forth in table B 304-2.2, whichever produce the greater stress.

¹⁹⁷⁹ c—Uniformly distributed live loads on beams or girders supporting other than storage areas and motor vehicle parking areas, when such structural member supports 150 square feet or more of roof area or floor area per floor, may be reduced as follows:

When the dead load is not more than 25 psf, the reduction shall be not more than 20 per cent;

When the dead load exceeds 25 psf and the live load does not exceed 100 psf, the reduction shall be not

Structural Requirements

more than the least of the following three criteria:

60 per cent,

0.08 per cent for each square foot of area supported,

100 per cent times (dead load psf plus live load psf) divided by (4.33 times live load psf).

No reduction is permitted for snow loads.

¹⁹⁷⁹ d—For columns, girders supporting columns, bearing walls, and foundation walls, supporting 150 square feet or more of roof area or floor area per floor other than storage areas and motor vehicle parking areas, the uniformly distributed live loads on these members shall be not less than the following percentages of the total live loads on the following levels:

80 per cent on the roof;

80 per cent on the floor immediately below the roof;

80 per cent on the second floor below the roof;

75 per cent on the third floor below the roof;

70 per cent on the fourth floor below the roof;

65 per cent on the fifth floor below the roof;

60 per cent on the sixth floor below the roof;

55 per cent on the seventh floor below the roof;

50 per cent on the eighth, ninth, tenth, and subsequent floors below the roof.

No reduction is permitted for snow loads.

B 304-2.2 (733.2b) Uniformly Distributed and Concentrated Live Loads

Uniformly distributed and concentrated live loads shall be the greatest loads produced by the intended occupancy and use, but in no case less than the minimum live load in conformity with table B 304-2.2. Where a concentrated load is not given, load shall be at least 250 pounds on an area 1 inch in diameter. Other concentrated loads shall be applied as follows: 100 pounds on upper and lower skylight screens, on an area 12 inches square; 150 pounds on an area 1 inch in diameter; 200 pounds on an area 1 inch in diameter; 250 pounds on ladder rung, at center of rung for moment, and at end of rung for shear; 300 pounds on elevator machine roof floor grating, on an area of 2 inches square; 2000 pounds on an area 30 inches square; 12,000 pounds on an area 30 inches square.

Structural Requirements

TABLE B 304-2.2. (I-733)—UNIFORMLY DISTRIBUTED AND CONCENTRATED LIVE LOADS

Occupancy or use	Uniformly distributed loads, psf	Concentrated loads in pounds
Dwelling units and public corridors on same floor	40	
Private interior stairs	75 ¹	
Business offices excluding storage areas	50	
Light storage	120	
Public rooms, public corridors, public lobbies, public entrance halls, stores	100	
Public stairs and exterior stairs: treads, balcony platforms	100 ¹	
Kitchens, other than domestic	100	
Attics:		
Accessible by stair or ladder in areas where the ceiling height is:		
4 feet 6 inches or more	30	
less than 4 feet 6 inches	20	150
Accessible by scuttle or means other than a stair, and of such height that household goods may be stored therein	20	150
Inaccessible (load for emergency access)	10	
Roofs used as promenades	40	
Other roofs	(2)	200
Skylight screens		100 ⁵
Garages, ramps and driveways, for passenger cars	50	2,000 ⁶
Garages, ramps and driveways, for buses, trucks and mixed usage	175	12,000 ⁶
Sidewalks over vaults	300	12,000 ⁶
Air conditioning space	200	2,000
Elevator machine rooms	(3)	300
Exitways	100	
Fan rooms	100	
Ladders, fixed:		
Rungs		250
Verticals		80 ⁴
Locker rooms	75	
Marquees	60	
Terraces, yards, for pedestrians	60	
Toilet rooms, public	60	
Workshops	80	

- Stringers of stairs need be designed only for uniform load.
- See section B 304-10c for minimum imposed loads for roofs.
- For loads see section B 304-11.
- Side rails of ladders need be designed only for 80 pounds at center of every rung, applied simultaneously.
- Skylight screen to have 3/4-inch to 1-inch mesh; upper screen to be 4 to 10 inches above glass and to overhang an identical amount. No uniform load need be figured.
- Or actual wheel load increased 50 per cent for impact, whichever is larger. Where clear height of garage entrance exceeds 7 feet, load for buses, trucks and mixed usage shall be used.

B 304-3 Snow Loads

(733.3)

1979

a—Minimum snow loads shall be in conformity with table B 304-3 and the snow map below, and shall be applied normal to the roof surface.

Structural Requirements

1979 b—Minimum snow loads in table B 304-3 and the snow map below shall be:

Increased due to nonuniform accumulation on pitched or curved roofs.

Increased in the valleys formed by multiple series roofs.

Increased due to snow sliding off sloping roof areas on-to adjacent roof areas.

Increased due to drifting snow on the lower levels of multilevel roofs and on roof areas adjacent to projections.

TABLE B 304-3. (II-733)—SNOW LOADS¹
In pounds per square foot

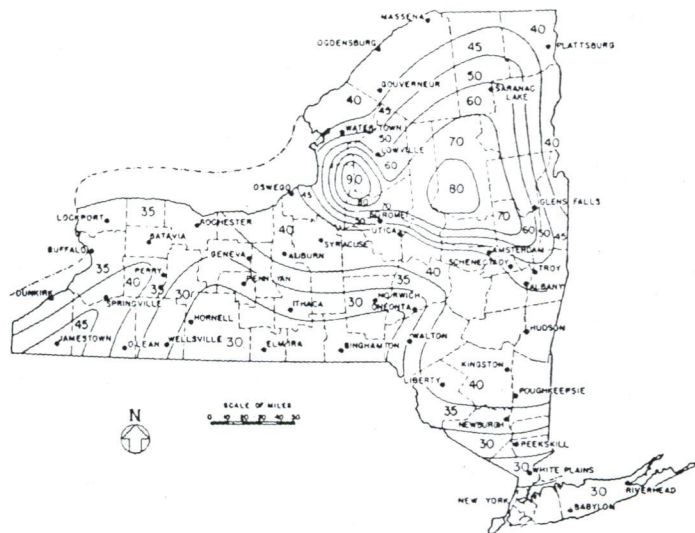
Zone numbers on snow map	Roof slope from horizontal ²					
	0°	20°	30°	40°	50°	60° or more
30	30	27	17	9	3	0
35	35	31	20	10	4	0
40	40	35	23	12	4	0
45	45	40	25	13	5	0
50	50	44	28	15	5	0
60	60	53	34	18	6	0
70 ³						
80 ³						
90 ³						

1. For minimum imposed loads see section B 304-10c.

2. For slopes between those tabulated, compute loads by straight-line interpolation.

3. For snow zones, 70, 80, and 90 on snow map, use same tabular values as for zone 60.

SNOW MAP OF NEW YORK STATE



**B 304-4
(733.4)****Wind Loads**

Minimum wind loads shall be in conformity with tables B 304-4a and B 304-4b, and shall be applied normal to the surface. These loads are based on a design wind velocity of 75 miles per hour at a height of 30 feet above grade level. Minimum wind loads on signs shall be in conformity with generally accepted standards.

**TABLE B 304-4a. (III-733)—WIND LOADS: WALLS, EAVES, CORNICES, TOWERS, MASTS AND CHIMNEYS
(In pounds per square foot)**

At height above grade in feet	Walls ^{1,4}	Eaves and cornices ²	Towers, masts and chimneys ⁴
501 to 600 ³	34	68	60
401 to 500	33	68	58
301 to 400	32	64	56
201 to 300	30	60	53
101 to 200	28	56	49
61 to 100	24	48	42
41 to 60	21	42	37
26 to 40	18	36	32
0 to 25	15	30	26

1. Exterior walls shall be capable of withstanding wind load on both the interior and exterior surfaces, acting non-simultaneously.
2. Load acting upward.
3. For heights above grade greater than 600 feet, add 1 psf to load for walls for each interval or part of interval of 200 feet above 600 feet; for eaves and cornices, and towers, masts and chimneys, corresponding loads are in proportion to those for walls.
4. Tabular values are for square and rectangular structures. For structures hexagonal or octagonal in plan, use projected area and multiply tabular values by 0.8; for structures round or elliptical in plan, use projected area and multiply values by 0.6.

**B 304-5
(733.5)****Overturning Force and Moment Due to Wind**

a—The overturning force shall be the wind load. The wind load shall be the load set forth in table B 304-4a, and shall be applied only to the windward vertical surface above the horizontal plane under consideration, and to the rise of the roof. The resisting force shall be the dead load of the structure above the horizontal plane under consideration, plus the strength of material and fastenings establishing continuity with the structure below.

b—The moments of stability and overturning shall be computed about the leeward edge of the horizontal plane under consideration.

c—The moment of stability of the structure above the horizontal plane under consideration shall be not less than 1½ times the overturning moment due to wind.

Structural Requirements

TABLE B 304-4b. (IV-733)—WIND LOADS: ROOFS
In pounds per square foot

Mean elevation of roof above grade level in feet	Direction of load ¹	Slope from horizontal ²			
		0° to 20°	20° to 30°	30° to 60°	Over 60°
501 to 500 ³	Downward	8	8	8 to 24	24
	Upward	29	29 to 24	24	24
401 to 500	Downward	8	8	8 to 23	23
	Upward	28	28 to 23	23	23
301 to 400	Downward	7	7	7 to 22	22
	Upward	27	27 to 22	22	22
201 to 300	Downward	7	7	7 to 21	21
	Upward	25	25 to 21	21	21
101 to 200	Downward	6	6	6 to 20	20
	Upward	24	24 to 20	20	20
61 to 100	Downward	5	5	5 to 17	17
	Upward	20	20 to 17	17	17
36 to 60	Downward	5	5	5 to 15	15
	Upward	19	19 to 15	15	15
21 to 35	Downward	5	5	5 to 14	14
	Upward	17	17 to 14	14	14
0 to 20	Downward	5	5	5 to 11	11
	Upward	14	14 to 11	11	11

1. Downward and upward loads act non-simultaneously.

2. For slopes between 20° and 30° with wind acting upward, and between 30° and 60° with wind acting downward, compute loads by straight-line interpolation.

3. For heights above greater than 600 feet, add 1 psf to upward load for 0° to 20° slope for each interval or part of interval of 200 feet above 600 feet; for upward loads on other slopes, and downward loads on all slopes, corresponding loads are in proportion to those for upward load for 0° to 20° slope.

B 304-6 (733.6)

Sliding Force Due to Wind

The sliding force due to wind load, equal to the overturning force, determined in conformity with section B 304-5, shall be resisted by the dead load of the structure above the horizontal plane under consideration, by anchors, and where applicable, by soil friction, providing a total resisting force equal to not less than 1½ times the sliding force. Anchors used to resist overturning may also provide resistance to sliding.

**B 304-7
(733.7)**

Uplift Force

Uplift force due to wind or hydrostatic head shall be resisted by dead load, acting directly or through anchors or fastenings, equal to not less than $1\frac{1}{4}$ times the uplift force.

**B 304-8
(733.8)**

Soil Pressures and Hydrostatic Head Loads

**B 304-8.1
(733.8a)**

General

Retaining walls and parts of the building below ground shall be designed to withstand the following loads, if applicable, and such loads shall be in addition to other imposed loads: lateral load, from adjacent soil; lateral load, from hydrostatic head; lateral load, from surcharge of fixed or moving loads; uplift from hydrostatic head.

**B 304-8.2
(733.8b)**

Freestanding Retaining Walls

a—The moments of stability and overturning shall be computed about the bottom base edge on the low earth side. The moment of stability shall be not less than $1\frac{1}{2}$ times the overturning moment.

b—The resisting force due to soil friction shall be not less than $1\frac{1}{2}$ times the sliding force.

**B 304-9
(733.9)**

Horizontal Impact Loads

a—Nonbearing partitions enclosing dwelling units shall be designed to resist without displacement at top or bottom a minimum linear load of 10 pounds per foot, applied at mid-height.

b—Parapet walls and railings, other than those for parking decks, including handrailings, both interior and exterior, shall be designed to resist a lateral impact at the top equivalent to a minimum linear load of 50 pounds per foot.

c—Where motor vehicles are parked by a driver, as differentiated from mechanical parking, enclosure walls, parapet walls, or barriers, at perimeter of area and around floor openings, shall be designed to resist a minimum linear load of 150 pounds per foot for level floors and 500 pounds per foot for ramps, applied 21 inches above the floor or ramp. Parapet or dwarf guard walls which are less than 42 inches high, shall be surmounted by a railing to a minimum height of 42 inches above the roof or deck, and the horizontal impact

Structural Requirements

loads shall be as required in paragraph b above. A continuous wheel bumper block at least 8 inches high shall be fastened to the floor, 4 feet or more from the walls, and shall be designed to resist a minimum linear load of 300 pounds per foot.

d—Where motor vehicles are parked mechanically, as differentiated from parking by a driver, barriers at the outer edge of deck shall be designed to resist a minimum linear load of 150 pounds per foot applied 21 inches above the deck. Wheel bumper blocks at least 4 inches high, designed to resist a minimum load of 300 pounds per tire, shall be fastened to decks in front of the front wheels and in the rear of the rear wheels, not more than 124 inches clear distance apart.

B 304-10 (733.10)

Combined Loads

a—The stress due to wind may be ignored if it is less than one third of the stress due to dead load plus imposed load excluding wind load.

b—If the stress due to wind exceeds one third of the stress due to dead load plus imposed load excluding wind load, the allowable stress of the material may be increased by one third.

c—On roofs where the slope is such that the snow load plus the wind load total less than 20 psf, the minimum imposed load shall be 20 psf perpendicular to the roof surface.

d—On roofs and eaves, snow or live load, and the wind load, shall be considered as acting simultaneously in such combination as imposes the greater stress.

B 304-11 (733.11)

Elevator Machine Loads

The loads on, and the safe working stresses and permissible deflections of, the supports of elevator machines and guide-rail brackets, shall be in conformity with generally accepted standards.

B 304-12 (733.12)

Loads Imposed During Construction Or Demolition

Loads imposed during construction or demolition on flooring, structural members, walls, bracing, scaffolding, sidewalk sheds or bridges, hoists and temporary supports of any kind incidental to the erection, alteration, or repair of any structure shall not subject the structure, or elements thereof, to loads beyond the design capacity.

**B 305
(734)**

ANALYSIS AND TEST OF STRUCTURAL ASSEMBLIES

The capacity of an assembly to sustain dead and imposed loads without exceeding the allowable stresses shall be determined by any one of the procedures described in this section, or by an approved combination thereof.

a—**Design analysis** in conformity with generally accepted engineering practice to establish that stresses in component structural material will not exceed safe working stresses defined in generally accepted standards, or in the absence of such standards, exceed safe working stresses interpreted and established from test results with due consideration given to the reliability, durability, and uniformity of the material and its behavior under stress. In no case shall the assigned safe working stress exceed two thirds of the yield strength nor one half of the ultimate strength of the material unless specifically permitted in section B 304-10. When safe working stresses are assigned to a material, the structural characteristics and reasonable uniformity of the material, as utilized, shall be assured by conformity with generally accepted standards.

b—**Tests** made in conformity with generally accepted standards of assemblies truly representative of the construction to be used, in order to establish that such assemblies conform to the performance criteria set forth in section B 306.

c—**Comparison** with an approved assembly of known characteristics and behavior under load, which assembly is directly comparable, in all essential characteristics to the assembly under consideration.

**B 306
(735)**

PERFORMANCE CRITERIA UNDER TEST

**B 306-1
(735.1)**

General Requirements

Buildings and their structural components subject to this Code shall, when submitted to the tests set forth in this section, meet the performance criteria prescribed for each test. Failure to meet the test criteria shall be evidence of non-compliance with this Code.

Structural Requirements

**B 306-2
(735.2)**

Under Imposed Load

When the assembly reacts by bending under the uniformly distributed imposed load, excluding impact, the deflection shall not exceed 1/360 of the span when the inside is to be plastered. When the inside is not to be plastered, the deflection shall not exceed 1/240 of the span. When a roof is not to be used as a promenade, and the underside is not to be plastered, the deflection shall not exceed 1/180 of the span.

**B 306-3
(735.3)**

Under 1½ Times Imposed Load

a—Under its dead load and 1½ times the uniformly distributed imposed load, excluding impact, the assembly shall sustain the load without structural damage. In testing floor assemblies and assemblies in compression, the load shall be applied twice.

b—For floor assemblies, the residual deflection from first application of the load shall not exceed 25 per cent of the maximum deflection under load. After the second application of the load, the total residual deflection shall be not more than 1.1 times the residual deflection resulting from the first application of the load.

**B 306-4
(735.4)**

Under Two Times Imposed Load

Under its dead load and two times the uniformly distributed imposed load, excluding impact, the floor, roof, and wall assembly shall sustain load without structural failure, for a minimum of 24 hours.

**B 306-5
(735.5)**

Impact Loads

Under an impact load of 60 pounds falling 4 feet for floors, 1½ feet for walls, roofs and nonbearing partitions enclosing dwelling units, on an area 10 inches in diameter, applied perpendicular to the assembly at its center, the assembly shall sustain no structural damage.

**B 306-6
(735.6)**

Racking Loads

Where exterior walls and partitions react by racking, the racking deformation, while the assembly is sustaining the imposed load, shall not exceed 1/400 of the height of the wall. Under 1½ times the load there shall be no structural damage, and under two times the load there shall be no structural failure.

Structural Requirements

**B 306-7
(735.7)**

Transmitted Loads

Fastenings and connections shall be capable of transmitting, without failure, twice the loads for which they are designed.

**B 307
(736)**

EXTERIOR PROTECTION

**B 307-1
(736.1)**

General Requirements

Whenever structural materials or assemblies are subject to deterioration and may become structurally unsound under the proposed condition of use, adequate protection shall be provided.

**B 307-2
(736.2)**

Exterior Materials

The exterior facing or covering of walls and roofs shall be resistant to the causes of deterioration as set forth in section B 301c without loss of strength or attachment which may render it unfit for use. The materials of such exterior facing or covering shall be treated if necessary to give the required protection.

**B 307-3
(736.3)**

Flashing

Whenever water can penetrate the exterior or cause damage to the interior of the assembly or structure, flashing or other barrier shall be provided to prevent its entrance or to redirect it outward.

**B 307-4
(736.4)**

Waterproofing

a—Foundation walls of cellars or basements, and floors in contact with the soil, shall be constructed or treated so as to prevent the penetration of ground and surface water.

b—Metallic structural elements in exterior walls not inherently corrosion resistant shall be protected against the effects of rain and moisture.

**B 307-5
(736.5)**

Grade Protection

Materials and assemblies subject to deterioration when in continued contact with surface water or melting snow, shall be so treated as to withstand such deterioration, or be placed so that they will not be in contact with such elements.

Structural Requirements

**B 308
(737)**

PROTECTION FROM DESTRUCTIVE INSECTS

Where local conditions require protection against termites and other destructive insects, the construction, soil treatment, and protection of openings shall prevent their access to vulnerable parts of the structure, in conformity with generally accepted standards.

**B 309
(738)**

MATERIALS REQUIREMENTS

All structural units of natural or manufactured materials shall comply with applicable specifications of authoritative agencies, or shall be subject to test in conformity with generally accepted standards in order to determine their characteristics.

Part 4

Fire-Safety Requirements

**B 401
(745)**

PREVENTION OF EXTERIOR FIRE SPREAD

**B 401-1
(745.1)**

General Requirements

a—In order to retard the spread of fire, multiple dwellings and accessory structures shall be located and constructed so that the distance between buildings and the fire resistance of exterior walls and of roof coverings are commensurate with the fire hazard involved.

b—The minimum fire-resistance ratings of the exterior walls of multiple dwellings and accessory structures, including those of air intakes and fire passages, shall be those set forth in table B 202-2.

**B 401-2
(745.2)**

Determination of Fire Hazard

**B 401-2.1
(745.2a)**

Within Fire Limits

When fire limits are established by municipalities, such fire limits shall, for the purposes of this Code, be designated as follows:

Fire limits A comprising the areas containing highly congested business, commercial and, or industrial occupancies, wherein the fire hazard is severe, and, or,

Fire limits B comprising the areas containing residential, business and, or commercial occupancies, or in which such uses are developing, wherein the fire hazard is moderate.

**B 401-2.2
(745.2b)**

Outside the Fire Limits

All those areas not included in fire limits A or B are designated herein as outside the fire limits.

**B 401-2.3
(745.2c)**

Municipalities Having Fire Limits

In municipalities which designate fire limits, multiple dwellings and accessory structures within such fire limits shall be constructed in conformity with the requirements set forth in section B 401 applicable to buildings within such fire limits. In

Fire-Safety Requirements

such municipalities multiple dwellings and accessory structures outside such fire limits shall be constructed in conformity with the requirements set forth in section B 401 applicable to buildings outside the fire limits.

B 401-2.4 (745.2d) Municipalities Having No Fire Limits

Multiple dwellings and accessory structures located in municipalities which do not designate any area or areas as a fire limit shall be constructed in conformity with the requirements set forth in section B 401 applicable to buildings outside the fire limits.

B 401-3 (745.3) Distance Separations

B 401-3.1 (745.3a) How Measured

Distance separation shall be the clear distance measured between the exterior walls of two buildings on the same premises, from an exterior wall to an interior lot line.

B 401-3.2 (745.3b) When Required

a—Distance separations set forth in table B 401-3.2 shall be required except as provided in paragraphs b and f of this section.

b—Distance separations shall not be required between buildings on the same premises when either building is one story in height and has an area of not more than 100 square feet.

c—Exterior walls or portions thereof may encroach upon the distance separation required by a type of construction, provided those portions of such walls which encroach are built of the higher type of construction imposed by the lesser distance separation.

d—When the height or construction of the exterior walls of the proposed and existing buildings is not the same, the applicable distance separation shall be that set forth for the higher building or for the building having exterior walls with the lower fire-resistance rating, whichever is the greatest distance.

e—The minimum distance separation for an open side of an open parking structure shall be 10 feet.

Fire-Safety Requirements

f—Where zoning regulations and this Code contain distance requirements applicable to the same structure, the greater distance shall control.

**TABLE B 401-3.2. (I-745)—MINIMUM DISTANCE SEPARATIONS
In feet**

Fire limits	Height in stories	Noncombustible walls with fire-resistance ratings of—			Combustible walls with noncombustible exterior facings giving protection of—		Combustible walls with combustible exterior facings
		At least 2 hours	Less than 2 hours but at least $\frac{3}{4}$ hour	Less than $\frac{3}{4}$ hour	At least $\frac{3}{4}$ hour	Less than $\frac{3}{4}$ hour	
Within fire limits	1	0	5	8	np	np	np
	2	0	10	12	np	np	np
	3 or more	0	15	15	np	np	np
Outside the fire limits	1	0	5	5	5	5	8
	2	0	5	8	8	10	10
	3 or more	0	8	10	np	np	np

B 401-3.3 Construction Limitations Within Fire Limits (745.3c)

a—Buildings may be of any type of construction other than type 5 providing they conform to the height and fire-area limitations set forth in section B 203 including tables B 203-1a, B 203-1b, B 203-1.1a and B 203-1.1b and the distance separations conform to the requirements set forth in section B 401-3.2 including table B 401-3.2.

b—Nonbearing exterior walls of noncombustible construction shall not be required to have a fire-resistance rating where distance separations conform to the requirements of table B 401-3.2, and provided a continuous vertical separation or spandrel at least 3 feet in height, or a horizontal extension of at least 2 feet, with a fire-resistance rating of at least 1 hour, is constructed at the floor level of each story. Such walls shall be required to have a fire-resistance rating where they form a part of an exit or other space required to be enclosed. A separation or spandrel shall not be required on open parking structures, or on buildings not more than two stories in height.

Fire-Safety Requirements

c—Open and enclosed balconies and porches shall be constructed of noncombustible materials.

B 401-3.4 (745.3d) Construction Limitations Outside the Fire Limits

a—Buildings may be of any type of construction providing they conform to the height and fire-area limitations set forth in section B 203 including tables B 203-1a, B 203-1b, B 203-1.1a and the distance separations conform to the requirements set forth in section B 401-3.2 including table B 401-3.2.

b—Nonbearing exterior walls of noncombustible construction shall not be required to have a fire-resistance rating where distance separations conform to the requirements of table B 401-3.2, and provided a continuous vertical separation or spandrel at least 3 feet in height, or a horizontal extension of at least 2 feet, with a fire-resistance rating of at least 1 hour, is constructed at the floor level of each story. Such walls shall be required to have a fire-resistance rating where they form a part of an exit or other space required to be enclosed. A separation or spandrel shall not be required on open parking structures, or on buildings not more than two stories in height.

c—Multiple dwellings of type 5 construction shall have not more than eight dwelling units in such building or each part of a building within fire walls.

d—Open porches, verandas, and balconies or enclosed porches with at least 60 per cent of glass area on three sides and serving not more than three dwelling units, may be constructed of combustible materials provided they do not extend outward more than 10 feet from the building, or upward more than 4 feet above the ceiling of the story which they serve, and are not less than 5 feet distant at any point from a lot line or from similar appurtenances on another building; if they exceed said limitations or serve as horizontal exits, they shall be constructed of noncombustible materials.

B 401-4 (745.4) Protection of Openings in Exterior Walls

B 401-4.1 (745.4a) General Requirements

a—Windows in exterior walls of buildings may be glazed with plastic materials provided that on each story such glazing does not exceed 25 per cent of the area of the wall having the glazing, and each piece is not more than 4 feet in vertical

Fire-Safety Requirements

dimension and 12 square feet in area, and is in conformity with the provisions of this section, and section B 404.

b—Exterior wall openings located less than 3 feet from an interior lot line shall be equipped with opening protectives.

c—Exterior wall openings less than 10 feet from an opening in a facing wall shall be equipped with opening protectives.

d—An exterior wall opening which is directly above another opening in the next lower story shall be equipped with an opening protective, except where one of the following conditions prevail:

- 1) Between openings there is at least 3 feet vertical separation or 2 feet horizontal extension, that has the required fire-resistance rating.
- 2) One of the openings contains air-conditioning equipment and there is at least 2 feet vertical separation or two feet horizontal extension, that has the required fire-resistance rating.

Such opening protectives are not required for open parking structures, or for buildings not more than two stories in height.

e—Exterior wall openings less than 30 feet above the roof of an extension or an adjacent building located within a horizontal distance of 10 feet, shall be equipped with opening protectives, unless the roof construction of such extension or the adjacent building has a fire-resistance rating of 1 hour or more.

f—Exterior wall openings less than 10 feet from an exterior stairway or an unenclosed bridge or balcony serving as an exit, shall be equipped with opening protectives, except as set forth in section B 211-7e.

g—Openings in exterior walls of enclosed exits shall be equipped with opening protectives, except that such protectives shall not be required for openings in the first story of exterior walls facing a street or open space at least 30 feet wide.

B 401-4.2 (745.4b)

Fire Resistance of Exterior Wall Opening Protectives

Fire-resistance ratings of required exterior wall opening protectives shall be at least $\frac{3}{4}$ hour. The size of wired glass panels or other glazing materials in such opening protectives shall be in conformity with generally accepted standards.

Fire-Safety Requirements

B 401-5 (745.5)

Eaves, Cornices and Exterior Trim

a—Eaves and cornices of combustible construction shall not encroach upon required distance separation, shall not extend vertically more than 5 feet, and shall be prohibited on buildings more than two stories in height, except as provided in paragraph b of this section.

b—Eaves and cornices of combustible construction as set forth in section B 401-5a are permitted on buildings more than two stories in height provided they do not extend horizontally nor vertically more than 2 feet, and the soffit is of noncombustible construction.

c—Where eaves and cornices of combustible construction, as set forth in section B 401-5a, are at least 10 feet from an interior lot line or a similar building appurtenance on the premises, such eaves and cornices are permitted to extend horizontally not more than 5 feet.

d—Where exterior trim of combustible construction, (other than eaves and cornices) exceeds 50 square feet in area and is located more than one story above adjoining finished grade on a building of other than type 5 construction, such trim shall be at least 5 feet from exterior wall openings at the same or higher elevation, or opening protectives shall be provided.

B 401-6 (745.6)

Roof Coverings

Roof coverings shall be capable of resisting fire commensurate with the severity of exposure and shall be installed in conformity with generally accepted standards.

B 401-6.1 (745.6a)

Classification

Roof coverings shall be classified on the basis of their resistance to exterior fire exposure as determined by tests made in conformity with generally accepted standards, as follows:

Class 1, 2 or 3 roof coverings are those which are capable of resisting severe, moderate, or light fire exposure, respectively, and which do not give off flying brands.

Class 4 roof coverings are those which are moderately effective in resisting light fire exposure, afford a slight degree of heat insulation to the roof deck, and are likely to give off flying brands.

B 401-6.2 **Limitations of Use**
(745.6b)

a—Within the fire limits, roof coverings, with or without insulation, shall be class 1 or 2, except that where the distance separation between buildings is more than 20 feet and the horizontal projected area of the roof does not exceed 2500 square feet, class 3 roof coverings may be used.

b—Outside the fire limits, roof coverings, with or without insulation, shall be class 1, 2 or 3; except that where the distance separation between buildings is more than 20 feet and the horizontal projected area of the roof does not exceed 2500 square feet, and the building does not exceed two stories in height, class 4 roof coverings or wood shingles may be used.

B 401-6.3 **Skylights**
(745.6c)

a—Skylights and roof panels shall conform to the requirements for roof coverings as set forth in section B 401-6, except as provided in section B 401-6.3.

b—Skylights and roof panels in roofs not required to have a fire-resistance rating are permitted to be glazed with plastic as set forth in section B 404, provided that each skylight or panel does not exceed 200 square feet in area, and that the distance between them is at least 5 feet.

c—Skylights and roof panels in roofs required to have a fire-resistance rating, are permitted to be glazed with plastic as set forth in section B 404, provided that the aggregate area of such material does not exceed 20 per cent of the space below the skylight or panel, that the area of each such skylight or panel does not exceed 100 square feet, and that the distance between them is at least 10 feet.

d—Skylights shall be mounted above the plane of the roof.

e—Glass in skylights and roof panels on a roof having a slope of less than 30 degrees shall be protected with screens above and below the glass, conforming to the requirements set forth in section B 402-4.4i.

f—Glazing in skylights and roof panels shall be readily breakable or removable in an emergency.

B 401-7 **Parapet Walls**
(745.7)

a—Parapet walls shall be provided on exterior walls of buildings of type 3 and 4 construction more than one story

Fire-Safety Requirements

high, when such exterior walls are required to have a fire-resistance rating. Parapet walls shall be provided on fire and party walls which are required to extend through the roof.

b—The height and fire-resistance ratings of parapet walls shall be in accordance with table B 401-7.

TABLE B 401-7. (II-745)—PARAPET WALLS

Required fire-resistance rating of building wall in hours	Minimum fire-resistance rating of parapet wall in hours	Minimum height of parapet wall in feet
$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{3}{4}$
1	1	1
2	2	2
3 or 4	3	3

B 401-8 (745.8)

Party Walls

a—Where buildings are joined at a common lot line, such buildings shall be separated by party walls in conformity with the requirements set forth in this section.

b—Openings shall not be permitted in party walls.

B 401-8.1 (745.8b)

Construction

a—Party walls shall form a continuous fire and smoke barrier between adjoining buildings from foundation to or through the roof, and in the event of removal or collapse of construction on one side shall not endanger the support of construction on the opposite side, and shall be capable of serving as exterior walls.

b—Party walls shall be constructed of noncombustible materials and shall extend above the roof to form a parapet wall in conformity with the requirements of table B 401-7, when either building is of type 2b, 3, 4 or 5 construction. When a roof is of noncombustible construction having a fire-resistance rating of at least $\frac{3}{4}$ hour, a party wall may terminate at the underside of the roof providing the junction of the wall and roof is made smoketight.

c—Party walls shall be made smoketight at their junction with exterior walls. In type 5 construction, the exterior walls shall be protected with noncombustible construction of the

Fire-Safety Requirements

same fire-resistance rating as the party walls for a distance of at least 24 inches on each side of the party wall, or the party wall shall project through the exterior wall at least 12 inches.

d—Where combustible members, such as joists and beams, are framed into party walls, such combustible members shall not extend through the wall but shall have at least 4 inches of solid noncombustible material below and at the sides and ends of such members.

B 401-8.2 (745.8c)

Fire Resistance

a—The fire-resistance ratings of party walls shall be as set forth in table B 202-2, except as otherwise set forth in this section.

b—The fire-resistance ratings of party walls between one-story multiple dwellings without a basement shall be at least 1 hour.

c—The fire-resistance ratings of party walls between a multiple dwelling and a building containing a nonresidential occupancy of low, moderate or high hazard classification (See State Building Construction Code applicable to General Building Construction, section C 202-3, and Appendix) shall be at least 2, 3 or 4 hours respectively.

B 402 (746)

PREVENTION OF INTERIOR FIRE SPREAD

B 402-1 (746.1)

General Requirements

a—Structural elements or members, including walls, partitions, columns, beams and trusses, shall have fire-resistance ratings of not less than those set forth in table B 202-2, except as required by section B 402-2.1. The fire-resistance ratings of the structural elements or members shall be determined in conformity with generally accepted standard fire test procedure.

b—Rooms and spaces used for purposes involving a fire hazard, including among others, rooms for storage of combustible materials, paint and repair rooms, kitchens and pantries serving public dining rooms, garages, and rooms for incinerators and heating equipment, shall be enclosed by fire-resistive construction as set forth in section B 402-4, or shall be provided with fire-protection equipment as set forth in section B 406.

Fire-Safety Requirements

c—Exits, including passageways, hallways and stairways, and elevator and dumbwaiter hoistways, escalators, shafts and other openings in floors, shall be enclosed or protected as set forth in section B 402-4.4.

d—Space within multiple dwellings used for occupancies other than residential or accessory, shall be separated from space used for residential purposes as set forth in section B 402-4.1.

e—In buildings of type 1 and 2 construction not more than 150 feet in height, nonbearing partitions within a dwelling unit may be constructed of fire-retardant wood.

f—Construction not required to have a fire-resistance rating may have combustible doors having no fire-resistance rating.

g—Flammable materials shall not be permitted as insulation or fill.

B 402-2 (746.2)

Fire Walls

The floor area per story of buildings shall be divided by fire walls into fire areas in accordance with section B 203 including tables B 203-1a, B 203-1b, B 203-1.1a and B 203-1.1b.

B 402-2.1 (746.2b)

Construction

a—Fire walls shall form a continuous fire and smoke barrier between fire areas from foundation to or through the roof, except that a fire wall may be offset at floor levels if the floor construction and its supports have the same fire-resistance rating as the wall; and the removal or collapse of construction on one side shall not endanger the support of construction on the opposite side.

b—Fire walls shall be constructed of noncombustible material and shall extend above the roof to form a parapet wall in conformity with the requirements of table B 401-7. Where a roof is of noncombustible construction having a fire-resistance rating of at least $\frac{3}{4}$ hour, a fire wall may terminate at the underside of the roof providing the junction of the wall and the roof is made smoketight.

c—Fire walls shall be made smoketight at their junction with exterior walls. In type 5 construction, the exterior walls shall be protected with noncombustible construction of the same fire-resistance rating as the fire walls for a distance of

Fire-Safety Requirements

at least 24 inches on each side of the fire wall, or the fire wall shall project through the exterior wall at least 12 inches.

d—Where combustible members, such as joists and beams, are framed into fire walls, such combustible members shall not extend through the wall but shall have at least 4 inches of solid noncombustible material below and at the sides and ends of such members.

e—Fire walls in type 2, 3 or 4 construction, shall not be required to extend downward through a cellar, basement, or lowest story, provided the floor over such cellar, basement, or lowest story is type 1 construction, and the structural supports for the fire walls have fire-resistance ratings at least equal to those required for the fire wall.

B 402-2.2 (746.2c) Fire Resistance

a—The fire-resistance ratings of fire walls shall be as set forth in table B 202-2, except as otherwise set forth in this section.

b—The fire-resistance ratings of fire walls in one-story multiple dwellings without a basement shall be at least 1 hour.

B 402-3 (746.3) Protection of Columns, Beams, Girders, and Trusses in Buildings of Type 1 and 2a Construction

a—Columns and vertical suspension members shall be individually encased throughout their length by fire-protective materials having fire-resistance ratings prescribed in table B 202-2, except as provided in paragraphs d and e of this section.

b—Beams, girders and trusses supporting more than one floor, or a roof and at least one floor, shall be individually encased throughout their length by fire-protective material having fire-resistance ratings prescribed in table B 202-2, except as provided in paragraphs d and e of this section.

c—Beams, girders and trusses supporting only one floor or a roof shall be individually encased by fire-protective material or be fire-protected by a continuous ceiling to provide a fire-resistance rating equivalent to that required for the floor or roof construction which they support or of which they form a part, as prescribed in table B 202-2, except as provided in paragraphs d and e of this section.

d—Where beams, girders and other structural members

Fire-Safety Requirements

are fire-protected by a continuous ceiling, the concealed space above such ceiling shall be firestopped or divided with noncombustible material into areas not exceeding 3000 square feet, with no dimension greater than 100 feet. Solid-web steel beams or girders may serve as part of such firestopping. Access to such concealed space shall be through a single opening having dimensions not to exceed 3 feet in either direction and protected by an opening protective conforming to the requirements set forth in section B 402-4.8.

e—That portion of the structural steel exposed on the exterior of a building, is not required to be encased or enclosed by fire-protective materials provided that the distance separation is not less than that set forth in table B 401-3.2 for noncombustible walls with a fire-resistance rating of less than $\frac{3}{4}$ hour, and provisions are made to limit the average rise in temperature of the steel under fire conditions to 1000° F.

f—Where ceilings that are required to provide a fire-resistance rating to a ceiling assembly, are pierced or recessed for fixtures, devices or duct outlets, adequate provision shall be made to maintain the integrity of such ceiling assembly.

g—Lintels more than 8 feet long that are located in bearing walls shall conform to the fire-resistance rating requirements for such walls as set forth in table B 202-2 except as provided in section B 402-3e.

B 402-4 (746.4)

Division by Fire Separations

B 402-4.1 (746.4a)

Separation of Mixed Occupancies

a—Nonresidential occupancies in or attached to a multiple dwelling, not accessory thereto, shall be separated from the multiple dwelling occupancy by fire separations having fire-resistance ratings in conformity with the requirements of table B 402-4, except as otherwise provided in this section.

b—Separations between nonresidential occupancies and lobbies or corridors may have openings not exceeding 35 square feet in area, equipped with self-closing opening protectives. Such openings shall be protected by sprinklers on each side of the separation.

c—Display windows in lobbies and exit corridors shall be separated from other parts of the building by a fire separation

Fire-Safety Requirements

having a fire-resistance rating of at least 1 hour. Access openings to display windows shall be equipped with self-closing opening protectives.

d—Where the lobbies or corridors and the adjacent spaces are both protected with a sprinkler system, there shall be no restriction on the size of openings in the fire separation, and no requirement for opening protectives.

e—Vending equipment or stands such as those used for the sale or distribution of tobacco, candy, or periodicals may be located in lobbies, corridors, and passageways, provided that they involve no greater fire hazard than that incidental to the ordinary equipment of the lobby, corridor, or passageway, and do not obstruct or interfere with any part of a required exit.

f—Mixed occupancies shall not be permitted in buildings of type 5 construction.

¹⁹⁷⁴**TABLE B 402-4. (I-746)—MINIMUM FIRE SEPARATION REQUIRED BETWEEN OCCUPANCIES**
(Fire-resistance ratings in hours)

Occupancy		B1	B2	B3
Business	(C1)	1	np	2
Mercantile	(C2)	2	np	2 ¹
Industrial	(C3.1)	2	np	np
	(C3.2)	np	np	np
	(C3.3)	np	np	np
Storage	(C4.1)	2	np	np
	(C4.2)	np	np	np
	(C4.3)	np	np	np
Assembly	(C5.1)	2	np	2
	(C5.2)	3	np	3
	(C5.3)	4	np	4
	(C5.4)	2	np	2
	(C5.5)	2	np	2
Institutional	(C6.1)	2	np	np
	(C6.2)	3	np	np
	(C6.3)	np	np	np

1. The C2 occupancy and exits therefrom shall be provided with an automatic sprinkler system conforming to section B 510-4.

B 402-4.2 (746.4b)

Construction

a—Fire separations and their supporting construction shall form a continuous fire and smoke barrier.

b—Fire separations between residential and other than residential occupancies shall be continuous and any open-

Fire-Safety Requirements

ings therein shall be protected with self-closing opening protectives.

c—Separation between tenancies shall extend through any concealed space of the floor, ceiling or roof construction above. For firestopping in attics, see section B 402-5.3f.

B 402-4.3 (746.4c)

Enclosure of Storage and Service Rooms

a—Carpenter, repair and paint shops, and other rooms or spaces where flammable materials are stored or used shall be enclosed by construction having a fire-resistance rating of at least 2 hours. When such shops or rooms are located within a multiple dwelling, the enclosing construction shall have no more than a single opening leading to space within a multiple dwelling. Such opening shall be protected by a self-closing 1½-hour opening protective. Such storage rooms may contain individual tenant storage spaces. If individual tenant storage rooms are provided, other than in general storage rooms, such individual tenant storage rooms may be enclosed with partitions of 1-hour fire-resistance rating.

b—Packing, receiving and shipping rooms shall be enclosed by construction having a fire-resistance rating of at least 2 hours. Space for the loading and unloading of motor vehicles shall be protected in conformity with the requirements of section B 402-4.7e.

B 402-4.4 (746.4d)

Enclosure of Exits, Stairways, Hoistways, and Shafts

a—Exits, including stairways and hallways forming a part thereof, shall be enclosed with construction having minimum fire-resistance ratings as set forth in table B 202-2. Lobbies may be a part of such enclosed exits provided they are within the enclosure and separated from nonresidential space as set forth in section B 402-4.1.

b—Elevator and dumbwaiter hoistways, escalators, shafts and other openings in floors, shall be enclosed with construction having minimum fire-resistance ratings as set forth in table B 202-2, except when located as set forth in paragraphs c and d of this section.

c—Stairways and escalators, other than required enclosed exits, for travel between not more than two successive stories of one tenancy or occupancy, may be permitted without enclosure provided such openings are protected with automatic opening protectives, or by some combination of

Fire-Safety Requirements

sprinklers, draft curtains, fire- and smoke-detecting and ventilating devices, in conformity with generally accepted standards. For exceptions, see section B 210-1c.

d—Enclosures for intercommunicating stairs or escalators shall not be required when such stairs or escalators pass through only one floor to a room in each of the two stories which they connect. Such rooms shall be enclosed with construction having a fire-resistance rating of at least 1 hour, and area of each room shall not exceed 1000 square feet.

e—Basement or cellar stairs shall be enclosed and separated from stairs leading to or from the upper stories, at the grade-level story, and shall have the openings at the top and bottom of such enclosure protected with self-closing opening protectives.

f—Openings in enclosures for exits and stairways shall be protected with opening protectives conforming to the requirements set forth in section B 402-4.8.

g—Corridors and hallways which are separated from enclosed exit stairs by fire separations with opening protectives meeting the requirements set forth in section B 402-4.8, shall be enclosed with construction having a fire-resistance rating of at least 1 hour.

h—A shaft exceeding 150 feet in height, and an enclosed stairway, shaft or hoistway having an area exceeding 4 square feet, penetrating two floors or more, other than mezzanine floors, and not extending through the roof, shall be provided with smoke vents having an area of at least 3½ per cent of the stairway, shaft or hoistway area. Such vents shall have the same fire-resistance rating as required for the shaft enclosure. In no event shall the area of the smoke vent be less than 3 square feet for each elevator car or less than 72 square inches for other shafts. Single smoke vents shall be permitted only when such vents extend through the roof; when it is impractical to continue the smoke vent vertically through the roof, two smoke vents shall be provided, each having the same area as required for a single smoke vent, and terminating at different sides of the building, except that the area of each smoke vent may be decreased 50 per cent when mechanical ventilation is provided. When one or more sides of the stairway, shaft or hoistway is an exterior wall of the building other than on an interior lot line, the vents may be windows and louvered panels as set forth in paragraph i of

Fire-Safety Requirements

this section. In lieu of the open-type vent, automatic louvers or vents shall be furnished, provided they are equipped with means for both manual and automatic operation. For automatic operation, a smoke detector shall be provided at each 50 feet of shaft height, with the topmost detector within 3 feet of the vent, and release shall be actuated as set forth in section B 510-7.

i—Stairways, shafts or hoistways serving the topmost story of a building, which extend through the roof, shall be vented as required for such stairways or shafts terminating at lower stories. Of the total required vent area for stairways, hoistways or other shafts, not less than one third shall be of the open type. Such open vent may be a louvered panel. The closed portion of the required vent area may be windows or skylights glazed with materials which are shatterable or which will be dislodged by heat under fire conditions. Such skylights shall be protected with screens above and below the glazing. Such screens shall have a $\frac{3}{4}$ -inch to 1-inch mesh, located 4 inches to 10 inches above the glazing, and shall overhang the glazing an identical amount. When the fixed portion of the required vent is a window, it shall be not closer than 3 feet to an interior lot line. Such window shall be located near the ceiling of such shaft and have the sill at least 2 feet above the main roof.

j—Elevator and power dumbwaiter machine rooms directly connected with hoistways shall be enclosed in walls of non-combustible material having a fire-resistance rating of not less than that required for the hoistway enclosure. The separation between the machine room and hoistway shall be of noncombustible material with no openings other than those essential for ventilation and elevator operating equipment.

k—Access to machine rooms shall be through self-closing and self-locking doors, openable from the inside, meeting the applicable fire-resistance requirements set forth in sections B 401-4 and B 402-4.8.

B 402-4.5 Enclosure of Kitchens, Cooking Spaces, and (746.4e) Public Dining Rooms

¹⁹⁷⁷ a—Kitchens^D and pantries serving public dining rooms, including but not limited to restaurants, cafeterias, coffee shops, and lunch rooms, shall be enclosed by construction having a fire-resistance rating of at least 2 hours; except that the enclosure may have a fire-resistance rating of 1 hour

Fire-Safety Requirements

where a special sprinkler installation conforming to section B 510-4.7 is provided in such kitchens and pantries.

Openings between a kitchen or pantry and a public dining room shall be provided with opening protectives as follows:

Automatic or self-closing 1½-hour opening protectives where the kitchen or pantry is not sprinklered, or

Automatic or self-closing ¾-hour opening protectives where the kitchen and pantry are sprinklered.

Openings between a kitchen or pantry and a public dining room shall be permitted without opening protectives as follows:

The kitchen and pantry shall be equipped with a special sprinkler installation;

A hood exhaust system for cooking equipment shall be provided and protected with a fixed-pipe fire extinguishing system;

A noncombustible draft curtain shall extend down a minimum of 24 inches from the ceiling above the opening; and

The opening shall be protected by sprinkler heads located on the kitchen side within 24 inches of the draft curtain and spaced not more than 48 inches apart, except that such sprinkler protection of the opening need not be provided where exits required from the public dining room open directly to the exterior at grade.

b—Kitchens in motels shall be separated from sleeping areas by fire separations having a fire-resistance rating of at least 1 hour.

c—Cooking spaces other than kitchens which are combined with, or located adjacent to or within dining areas, such as in coffee shops, shall be separated from the dining area by a smoke and draft baffle.

d—Public dining rooms, coffee shops and other spaces used for similar purposes, which have no permanently installed equipment for cooking within such space other than incidental counter service equipment provided with exhaust hoods, shall not be required to be enclosed or separated from other public space.

B 402-4.6 (746.4f)

Enclosure of Heat Producing Equipment and Refuse Rooms

a—High capacity heater rooms shall be located in a

Fire-Safety Requirements

separate building or be enclosed by noncombustible construction having a fire-resistance rating of not less than 2 hours.

b—Moderate capacity heater rooms shall be located in a separate room enclosed by construction having a fire-resistance rating of at least 1 hour.

c—Low capacity heater rooms shall not be required to be enclosed. Where an enclosure is provided for such equipment, the enclosure shall have a fire-resistance rating of at least $\frac{3}{4}$ -hour, and an interior finish providing at least 10 minutes of fire protection to the combustible members. Where such heat producing equipment within an enclosure serves one dwelling unit, openings in one interior wall shall be permitted without opening protectives.

B211-1m

d—Fuel-burning equipment for garages shall be located in separate buildings or in rooms enclosed by vaportight noncombustible construction having a fire-resistance rating of at least 2 hours except as set forth in section B 504-2.13a. Entrance to enclosed heater rooms shall be from the outside of the building, or through a vestibule ventilated in conformity with the requirements of section B 508-3.1b. Interior wall openings in such enclosing construction shall be limited to those necessary for the passage of heating pipes and ducts. The space around such pipes and ducts shall be sealed with noncombustible material.

e—Boilers having a rated gross capacity of less than 40,000 Btu per hour for generating steam for accessory cleaning and pressing shall not be required to be enclosed and are excluded from the provisions of this section.

f—Incinerator rooms and spaces for the temporary storage of refuse shall be enclosed by noncombustible construction having a fire-resistance rating of not less than 2 hours with a single opening protected by a self-closing $1\frac{1}{2}$ -hour opening protective.

g—Flues for incinerators shall be enclosed in noncombustible material and shall be constructed in conformity with the requirements for flues as set forth in section B 505.

B 402-4.7 (746.4g)

Separation of Garages and Open Parking Structures from Multiple Dwellings

a—Each garage area of 1000 square feet or less in, or attached to, a multiple dwelling, shall be separated from the

Fire-Safety Requirements

multiple dwelling by construction having a fire-resistance rating of at least $\frac{3}{4}$ -hour but not less than that required for the members and structural elements of the multiple dwelling. Only one opening shall be permitted in the separation between the garage and multiple dwelling, and such opening shall be equipped with a self-closing opening protective having a fire-resistance rating of at least $\frac{3}{4}$ -hour.

b—Each garage area of more than 1000 square feet in, or attached to, a multiple dwelling shall be separated from the multiple dwelling by noncombustible construction having a fire-resistance rating of at least 2 hours but not less than that required for the members and structural elements of the multiple dwelling. Access between such a garage and multiple dwelling shall be through a vestibule of 2 hour fire-resistive construction, ventilating directly to the outer air, as set forth in section B 508-3.1b. The top of the sill in a door opening between such vestibule and garage, or the floor of such vestibule, shall be at least 8 inches above the level of the garage floor. The distance between the openings into and from the vestibule shall be not less than 6 feet, and such openings shall be protected with self-closing opening protectives having a fire resistance rating of at least $1\frac{1}{2}$ hours.

c—Open parking structures attached to a multiple dwelling, shall be separated from the multiple dwelling by noncombustible construction having a fire-resistance rating of at least 1 hour but not less than that required for the members and structural elements of the multiple dwelling. Access between the open parking structure and multiple dwelling shall be permitted at any level and such openings shall be protected with self-closing opening protectives having a fire-resistance rating of at least $\frac{3}{4}$ -hour.

d—Dispensing of gasoline and the greasing and repair of motor vehicles shall not be permitted in garages or open parking structures.

e—Where space is provided within multiple dwellings for loading or unloading of motor trucks, such space shall be enclosed with noncombustible construction having a fire-resistance rating of at least 2 hours with interior wall openings protected with automatic or self-closing opening protectives having a fire-resistance rating of at least $1\frac{1}{2}$ hours.

f—For purposes of this Code, a carport with no more than two enclosing walls shall not be deemed to be a garage.

Fire-Safety Requirements

B 402-4.8 **Openings in Fire Walls and Fire Separations** **(746.4h)**

a—Openings in fire walls, fire separations, and openings in walls, floors and ceilings that are required to have a fire-resistance rating, shall be protected by opening protectives having fire-resistance ratings as set forth in table B 402-4.8, except as otherwise permitted in section B 402-4.4 and paragraph b of this section. Opening protectives shall be equipped with devices conforming to the requirements of section B 211-4.1b.

b—Vision panels conforming to the requirements of generally accepted standards, shall be permitted in $\frac{3}{4}$ -hour and $1\frac{1}{2}$ -hour opening protectives. Enclosed spaces required to have a fire-resistance rating of not more than 1 hour, are permitted such a vision panel in a wall in lieu of a vision panel in the door.

c—Openings in fire walls for ventilating or air conditioning ducts shall be equipped with fire dampers or shutters constructed in conformity with generally accepted standards. Such dampers or shutters in fire walls shall be arranged so that one is on each face of the fire wall and so that both operate automatically when either is exposed to fire in the duct. Openings for ducts in fire separations required to have a fire-resistance rating of not more than 2 hours, shall be protected with fire dampers or shutters, except that such dampers shall not be required in ducts having an area of 20 square inches or less.

d—Service openings for incinerators shall be equipped with self-closing $\frac{3}{4}$ -hour opening protectives arranged so that there is no opening into the flue when the hopper is being filled.

TABLE B 402-4.8. (II-746)—OPENING PROTECTIVES FOR INTERIOR WALL OPENINGS

Fire resistance rating of wall in which opening occurs, in hours	Fire-resistance rating of opening protective, in hours
3 or more	3
2	$1\frac{1}{2}$
1 or $\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{3}{4}$

**B 402-5
(746.5)** **Firestopping**

**B 402-5.1
(746.5a)** **General Requirements**

Concealed spaces within wall, ceiling, partition, floor, stair, attic or cornice construction and around chimney, pipe and duct openings in such construction, and between tenancies, shall be firestopped or filled with noncombustible material to prevent the passage of flame, smoke, fumes, and hot gases.

**B 402-5.2
(746.5b)** **Materials**

a—Firestopping or fill shall be of nonflammable material which can be shaped, fitted and permanently secured in position.

b—Noncombustible firestopping materials shall be used in buildings of type 1 and 2 construction, and also around fireplaces, flues and chimneys in buildings of any type of construction.

c—Combustible firestopping materials may be used in buildings of type 3, 4 and 5 construction, except as provided in paragraph b of this section.

**B 402-5.3
(746.5c)** **Location**

a—Concealed vertical spaces in walls and partitions shall be firestopped at each floor level and at the ceiling of the uppermost story so that such spaces will not be continuous for more than one story, or communicate with concealed horizontal spaces in the floor or roof construction.

b—When combustible materials form a part of the concealed space between surface finish and the base to which they are applied, the concealed space shall be filled with noncombustible material, or be firestopped so that no dimension of such concealed space exceeds 8 feet vertically or 20 feet horizontally.

c—Space between floor joists, where ceilings are attached directly to the joists, shall be firestopped for the full depth of the joists at all points of support, under supported walls and partitions having a required fire-resistance rating, and under all partitions separating dwelling units.

d—Concealed space in stairs shall be firestopped so as not to communicate at the top and bottom of the stairs with concealed space in the floor construction.

Fire-Safety Requirements

e—Exterior cornices and eaves shall be firestopped at the ends of fire and party walls, and at intervals of not more than 20 feet.

B402-3d
Type 1+2

f—In buildings of type 3, 4 and 5 construction, the space in attics or between combustible floor or roof construction and a ceiling, shall be firestopped so that no area of such concealed space shall be greater than 3000 square feet, with no dimension greater than 100 feet.

**B 403
(747)**

INTERIOR FINISHES, TRIM AND DECORATIVE MATERIALS

**B 403-1
(747.1)**

General Requirements

a—Interior finish materials used for acoustical correction, surface insulation and decorative treatment on the surfaces of walls and ceilings, and interior trim materials, shall conform with all requirements set forth in this section.

b—Interior finish and trim shall be of materials that will not, in burning, give off excessive amounts of smoke or objectionable gases.

**B 403-2
(747.2)**

Classification of Interior Finish Materials

Interior wall and ceiling finish materials shall be classified in accordance with their surface flame-spread ratings determined by tests conducted in conformity with generally accepted standards, and as follows:

Class	Surface flame-spread rating
A	0 to 25
B	26 to 75
C	76 to 200
D	201 to 500

**B 403-3
(747.3)**

Use of Interior Finishes

a—Interior wall and ceiling finishes in multiple dwellings shall be as set forth in the following table, except as otherwise provided in this section.

b—Spaces in which class C finish is used shall be enclosed by construction having a fire-resistance rating of at least ¾-hour.

Fire-Safety Requirements

- c—Class D finish shall not be used in multiple dwellings.
- d—Where a sprinkler system is provided, class B interior finish may be used in locations where class A is required, and class C may be used in locations where class B is required.
- e—Luminous ceilings which have a heat distortion point of 200 °F. or less shall not be permitted in buildings of group B2 occupancy or in exits and assembly spaces of buildings of any occupancy classification. The material of such ceilings shall be self-extinguishing on the basis of tests in conformity with generally accepted standards. No individual sheet or panel shall exceed 75 square feet in area between supports.
- f—A luminous ceiling located below or above sprinkler heads shall be so installed that it will not interfere with the operation of the sprinkler system. Where installed below sprinkler heads, it shall be of material that will fall from its mounting at a temperature of at least 15 degrees lower than the temperature at which the sprinkler heads operate.

TABLE B 403-3. (I-747)—INTERIOR FINISH IN MULTIPLE DWELLINGS

Location	Class of Interior Finish
Assembly space	A or B
Enclosed stairways, passageways and exits	A
Passageways and corridors not a part of an enclosed exit.	A or B
Public kitchens and pantries, paint and repair rooms, storage rooms, and similar fire hazardous areas	A
Other locations in group B1 occupancy	A, B, or C
Other locations in group B2 and B3 occupancy	A or B

B 403-4 (747.4)

Use of Interior Trim

- a—In buildings of type 1 and 2 construction, interior trim in exits, stairways and passageways, shall be noncombustible or fire-retardant lumber, except that handrails may be combustible.
- b—Interior wood trim is permitted wherever class B or C interior finish is required, except as set forth in paragraph a above.

Fire-Safety Requirements

c—Finish flooring of wood or other combustible materials may be used in any location, except in boiler rooms required to have at least a 1-hour fire-resistance rating, in high hazard spaces, and in exits of buildings more than three stories in height.

B 403-5 (747.5)

Attachment of Interior Finish and Trim

a—Interior finish and trim shall be cemented or otherwise fastened in place with materials that will not, in burning, give off smoke or gases, denser or more toxic than given off by untreated wood or paper, and that will not readily loosen when subjected to a room temperature of 400 °F. for a period of 30 minutes.

b—Interior wall and ceiling finishes which are less than 1/8-inch thick may be used when mounted directly on non-combustible material.

c—Interior finish materials applied to walls and ceilings required to be of noncombustible construction, shall be applied directly to a noncombustible base or to furring or nailing strips which do not exceed 1 3/4 inches in nominal thickness. Concealed space between finish materials and noncombustible base shall be firestopped in conformity with the requirements set forth in section B 402-5.3b.

d—When class C finishes are set out from walls or ceilings more than 1 3/4 inches, they shall be attached directly to non-combustible backing.

e—In multiple dwellings not more than three stories in height or which contain fewer than thirty sleeping rooms for transient occupancy, interior finish materials may be applied directly to combustible structural members or to a combustible base.

f—Finish flooring of wood and wearing surface materials including cork, rubber, linoleum, asphalt and composition tile, and other materials of similar combustible characteristics, where permitted by section B 403-4c, shall be attached directly to the base, and concealed spaces, if any, shall be filled with noncombustible material.

B 403-6 (747.6)

Use of Draperies and Other Decorative Materials

In public spaces and exits of multiple dwellings, draperies, hangings and decorative fabrics and plastics shall be non-

Fire-Safety Requirements

combustible or flame-resistant as determined by tests made in conformity with generally accepted standards.

**B 404
(748)**

PLASTIC MATERIALS

**B 404-1
(748.1)**

General Requirements

a—Plastic materials shall be classified in accordance with their burning characteristics as determined by tests conducted in conformity with generally accepted standards.

b—Plastic materials in exits shall be legibly marked to identify the burning characteristics.

c—The requirements of this section are limited to construction regulated by this Code, and shall not regulate plastic materials as permitted in Part 5 of this Code.

d—Plastic materials which give off smoke or gas denser or more toxic than given off by untreated wood or paper under comparable exposure to heat or flame, or which burn faster than 2½ inches per minute as determined by tests conducted in conformity with generally accepted standards, shall not be permitted.

e—Plastic materials used for light transmission in artificial lighting equipment are not required to conform to flame-spread ratings for interior finish, provided they conform to the following:

- 1) Fall from their frames at a temperature at least 200°F. below their ignition temperature; for exception, see section B 403-3f.
- 2) Remain in place for at least 15 minutes at 175°F.
- 3) Smoke density rating as tested in conformity with generally accepted standards for plastic material, is not over 75.

f—Plastic materials for construction of structural elements shall not be permitted in buildings of group B2 and B3 occupancy nor in exits of buildings more than one story in height, except that plastics may be used for light transmission in artificial lighting equipment, provided they occupy an area not exceeding 20 per cent of the ceiling area of the space in which they are located.

g—Plastic materials may be used as a roof over an unenclosed structure located at grade level provided such roof does not exceed 10 feet in height and 1000 square feet in area.

Fire-Safety Requirements

h—One-story accessory structures, located at grade level, not exceeding 1200 square feet in area and 16 feet in height, may be constructed of plastic materials provided that the distance separation is not less than 20 feet.

1879

B 404-2 (748.2)

Foam Plastic

a—Foam plastic insulation, except as set forth in paragraphs b and c of this section, shall have a surface flame spread rating no greater than 75 and a smoke density rating no greater than 450 and shall be permitted as follows:

Within the cavity of a concrete or masonry wall

On the interior surface of concrete or masonry walls provided the foam plastic insulation is protected by a thermal barrier

Within combustible wall, roof or floor/ceiling assemblies, that are not required to have a fire resistance rating, provided the foam plastic insulation is protected on the interior side by a thermal barrier

As nonstructural sheathing for combustible exterior walls provided the wall cavity is insulated with noncombustible material covered by a thermal barrier on the interior side.

b—Foam plastic shall be permitted as a component of an approved built-up roof.

c—Foam plastic shall be permitted as an integral component within a wall, roof or floor/ceiling assembly approved for the intended use.

B 405 (749)

FIREPLACES

B 405-1 (749.1)

General Requirements

Fireplaces and similar construction intended for burning fuel in open fires shall be designed and constructed of noncombustible material, shall be stable and structurally safe, shall be connected to chimneys in conformity with the requirements set forth in section B 505, and shall be insulated so that, when in use, nearby or adjacent combustible material and structural members shall not be heated to temperatures in excess of 175°F.

Fire-Safety Requirements

B 405-2
(749.2)

Hearths and Linings

Hearths and linings or other parts of fireplaces exposed directly to flame shall be of materials that will not melt, disintegrate, spall, or shatter at temperatures up to 2000 °F.

B 405-3
(749.3)

Mantels and Trim

Wood mantels and trim on fireplaces shall be placed and attached so that they cannot be heated to temperatures in excess of 175 ° F. or ignited by sparks or embers from the fire.

B 406
(750)

FIRE PROTECTION EQUIPMENT

1976

B 406-1
(750.1)

Alternate Requirements

a—A fire- and smoke-detecting system installed in conformity with section B 510-3, shall be permitted in lieu of a required fire alarm system, or the required special sprinkler installation as set forth in section B 406-4.2a, or in lieu of both.

b—A special sprinkler installation provided in accordance with section B 406-4.2b and installed in conformity with section B 510-4.7e shall be permitted in lieu of a required corridor sprinkler system.

c—A sprinkler system installed in conformity with section B 510-4, shall be permitted in lieu of all or any of the following: a required fire alarm system; fire- and smoke-detecting system; single station smoke-detecting alarm devices; heat-detecting alarm system; and special sprinkler installation.

B 406-2
(750.2)

Fire Alarm System

A fire alarm system installed in conformity with section B 510-2 shall be provided as follows:

Hotels, lodging houses and dormitory buildings. . . In buildings 3 stories in height, or where there are more than 30 sleeping rooms.

Group B1 other than hotels, lodging houses and dormitory buildings. . . In buildings more than 250 feet in height.

Group B3. . . In buildings more than 150 feet in height.

Fire-Safety Requirements

B 405-2
(749.2)

Hearths and Linings

Hearths and linings or other parts of fireplaces exposed directly to flame shall be of materials that will not melt, disintegrate, spall, or shatter at temperatures up to 2000°F.

B 405-3
(749.3)

Mantels and Trim

Wood mantels and trim on fireplaces shall be placed and attached so that they cannot be heated to temperatures in excess of 175° F. or ignited by sparks or embers from the fire.

B 406
(750)

FIRE PROTECTION EQUIPMENT

B 406-1
(750.1)

Alternate Requirements

a— A fire- and smoke-detecting system installed in conformity with section B 510-3, shall be permitted in lieu of a required fire alarm system, or the required special sprinkler installation as set forth in section B 406-4.2a, or in lieu of both.

b— A special sprinkler installation provided in accordance with section B 406-4.2b and installed in conformity with section B 510-4.7e shall be permitted in lieu of a required corridor sprinkler system.

c— Except in hotels, motels, lodging houses and dormitory buildings, a sprinkler system installed in conformity with section B 510-4, shall be permitted in lieu of any of the following: a required fire alarm system; fire- and smoke-detecting system; single station smoke-detecting alarm devices; heat detecting alarm system; and special sprinkler installation.

1983 ←

B 406-2
(750.2)

Fire Alarm System

A fire alarm system installed in conformity with section B 510-2 shall be provided as follows:

Hotels, motels, lodging houses and dormitory buildings ... In buildings three stories or more in height, or where there are more than thirty sleeping rooms.

Group B1 other than hotels, lodging houses and dormitory buildings ... In buildings more than 250 feet in height.

Group B3... In buildings more than 150 feet in height. More than 50 sleeping rooms.

Group B1 other than hotels, lodging houses and dormitory buildings. ... In buildings more than 250 feet in height.

Group B3... In buildings more than 150 feet in height.

Fire-Safety Requirements

1979

B 406-3 (750.3)

Fire- and Smoke-Detecting System

A fire- and smoke-detecting system, installed in conformity with section B 510-3, shall be provided as follows:

Group B1. . . In all community residences.

Hotels, lodging houses and dormitory buildings

. . . In buildings of type 1 or 2a construction, more than 3 stories in height and having 75 or more sleeping rooms.

. . . In buildings of type 2b, 3 and 4 construction, more than 3 stories in height and containing 50 or more sleeping rooms.

B 406-4 (750.4)

Sprinklers

B 406-4.1 Sprinkler Systems

(750.4a)

¹⁹⁷⁷ a—A sprinkler system installed in conformity with section B 510-4 shall be provided as follows:

Group B2. . . . All buildings.

Group B3. . . . In buildings more than six stories in height.¹

Groups B1 through B3. . . . In cellars exceeding 4000 square feet in fire area except in habitable spaces.

Groups B1 through B3. . . . In cellar space used for storage of flammable materials where such space exceeds 2500 square feet in area.

Groups B1 through B3. . . . In above-grade garages within a multiple dwelling where the fire area of the garage exceeds 5000 square feet.

Groups B1 through B3. . . . In below-grade garages within a multiple dwelling where the fire area of the garage exceeds 2500 square feet.

1. In lieu of a sprinkler system, a fire- and smoke-detecting system connected to a supervised central station and installed in conformity with section B 510-3 is permitted.

¹⁹⁷⁶ b—A sprinkler system installed in conformity with section B 510-4 shall be provided in corridors as follows:

Group B1. . . . In buildings 4 stories or more in height.

Group B3. . . . In buildings four to six stories in height.

Fire-Safety Requirements

B 406-3
(750.3)

Fire- and Smoke-Detecting System

a —In addition to the requirements set forth in sections B 406-2, B 406-4 and B 406-6, a partial fire and smoke detecting system installed in conformity with section B 510-3 and having manual fire alarm boxes in conformity with section B 510-2.2, shall be provided in stairways, corridors, spaces for public or assembly use, basements, cellars, boiler rooms, mechanical equipment rooms and service and storage rooms as follows:

Hotels, Motels, Lodging Houses and Dormitory Buildings.

... In buildings three stories or more in height, or where there are more than thirty sleeping rooms.

b —A fire- and smoke-detecting system, installed in conformity with section B 510-3, shall be provided as follows:

Group B1... In all community residences.

B 406-4
(750.4)

Sprinklers

B 406-4.1
(750.4a)

Sprinkler Systems

a —A sprinkler system installed in conformity with section 510-4 shall be provided as follows:

Group B1....Hotels, motels, lodging houses and dormitory buildings:

In buildings 2 stories or less in height--- in assembly and public occupancies and exits therefrom.

In buildings 3 stories or more in height--- entire building including accessory and mixed occupancies.

Group B2....All buildings

Group B3....In buildings more than six stories in height.

Groups B1 through B3....In cellars exceeding 4000 square feet in area except in habitable spaces.

Groups B1 through B3.... In cellar space used for storage of flammable materials where such space exceeds 2500 square feet in area

Groups B1 through B3....In above-grade garages within a multiple dwelling where the fire area of the garage exceeds 5000 square feet.

Groups B1 through B3....In below-grade garages within a multiple dwelling where the fire area of the garage exceeds 2500 square feet.

1. In lieu of a sprinkler system, a fire- and smoke-detecting system connected to a supervised central station and installed in conformity with section B 510-3 is permitted.

b —A sprinkler system installed in conformity with section 3 510-4 shall be provided in corridors as follows:

Group B1....In buildings 4 stories or more in height.

Group B3....In buildings four to six stories in height.

1086

1976

**B 406-4.2
(750.4b)**

Special Sprinkler Installations

a—A special sprinkler installation conforming to the requirements of section B 510-4.7a, b, c and d, shall be provided as follows:

Existing buildings as set forth in sections B 105-2.1 and B 105-2.3 In storage and service rooms, and kitchens and cooking spaces serving public dining rooms, that do not have the fire-resistance ratings required by sections B 402-4.3 and B 402-4.5.

b—A special sprinkler installation conforming to the requirements of section B 510-4.7e shall be provided as follows:

Groups B1 and B3 In lieu of a sprinkler system required in corridors serving dwelling units or sleeping rooms, such special sprinkler installation shall have at least one sprinkler head located within each dwelling unit or sleeping room for transient occupancy, on or near the ceiling adjacent to each doorway from a corridor.

**B 406-5
(750.5)**

Standpipe Systems

A standpipe system, installed in conformity with the requirements of section B 510-5, shall be provided as follows:

All occupancies including accessory garage
 . . . In buildings 4 or more stories in height.

1976

**B 406-6
(750.6)**

Single-Station Smoke-Detecting Alarm Device

At least one single-station smoke-detecting alarm device installed in conformity with section B 510-8, shall be located on or near the ceiling and shall be provided in sleeping rooms for transient occupancy or within dwelling units adjacent to sleeping spaces as follows:

Group B1 other than hotels, motels, lodging houses and dormitory buildings All buildings.

Group B1 hotels, motels, lodging houses and dormitory buildings In buildings where a fire- and smoke-detecting system is not required as set forth in section B 406-3.

Group B3 In buildings 6 stories or less in height.

1976

B 406-4.2
(750.4b)

Special Sprinkler Installations

a—A special sprinkler installation conforming to the requirements of section B 510-4.7a, b, c and d, shall be provided as follows:

Existing buildings as set forth in sections B 105-2.1 and B 105-2.3 In storage and service rooms, and kitchens and cooking spaces serving public dining rooms, that do not have the fire-resistance ratings required by sections B 402-4.3 and B 402-4.5.

b—A special sprinkler installation conforming to the requirements of section B 510-4.7e shall be provided as follows:

Groups B1 and B3 In lieu of a sprinkler system required in corridors serving dwelling units or sleeping rooms, such special sprinkler installation shall have at least one sprinkler head located within each dwelling unit or sleeping room for transient occupancy, on or near the ceiling adjacent to each doorway from a corridor.

B 406-5
(750.5)

Standpipe Systems

A standpipe system, installed in conformity with the requirements of section B 510-5, shall be provided as follows:

All occupancies including accessory garage
... In buildings 4 or more stories in height.

B 406-6
(750.6)

Single-Station Smoke-Detecting Alarm Device

At least one single-station smoke-detecting alarm device installed in conformity with section B 510-8 shall be located on or near the ceiling and shall be provided in sleeping rooms for transient occupancy or within dwelling units adjacent to sleeping spaces as follows:

Group B1.....All buildings.

Group B3.....In buildings 6 stories or less in height.

1983?

Section B 406-6
Group B3 In buildings 6 stories or less in height.

b

Fire-Safety Requirements

1976

B 406-7 (750.7)

Heat-Detecting Alarm System

A heat-detecting alarm system installed in conformity with section B 510-9 shall be provided for kitchens and kitchenettes in dwelling units as follows:

Group B3 In buildings 6 stories or less in height.

Part 5

Equipment Requirements

**B 501
(755)**

General Requirements for Equipment

a—Plumbing, heating, electrical, ventilating, air conditioning, refrigerating, fire protection and radiation production equipment, elevators, dumbwaiters, escalators, and other mechanical additions, installations, or systems for the use of the building shall be designed, installed, and located so that under normal conditions of use such equipment and systems will not be a potential danger to health or welfare, a danger because of structural defects, or a source of ignition, or a radiation hazard, and will not create excessive noise, or otherwise become a nuisance. Equipment and systems include, but are not limited to, apparatus, devices, fixtures, piping, pipe hangers, pipe covering, wiring, fittings, and materials used as part of, or in connection with, such installations.

b—Equipment and systems shall be made of approved materials, shall be free from defective workmanship, and shall be designed and installed so as to be durable, without need for frequent repairs or major replacements. Equipment requiring operation, inspection, or maintenance shall be located so that easy access to it is provided.

c—The design and installation of equipment and systems shall conform to the requirements of section B 107.

d—New installation of equipment in existing buildings, and alterations and extensions to existing equipment and systems, shall conform with the requirements of this Code.

e—Equipment and systems shall be subjected to such tests as are appropriate which will disclose defects and leaks. No equipment or part of a system shall be covered or concealed until it has been tested and approved.

f—Equipment and systems shall be capable of performing their functions satisfactorily without being forced to operate beyond the safe design capacity.

g—Equipment and systems subject to damage from freezing shall be adequately protected against freezing.

h—Equipment within garages shall be protected from damage by motor vehicles.

Equipment Requirements

i—Each multiple dwelling shall be provided with equipment to serve its own requirements, except that buildings designed to remain permanently under a single ownership may have common service facilities.

j—Moving parts of equipment which may be a potential hazard shall be guarded to protect against accidental contact.

k—Piping, conduits, or ducts which may be a potential hazard shall not be permitted in exits, stairways, or hoistways.

B 502 (756)

PLUMBING

B 502-1 (756.1)

General Requirements

a—Plumbing systems shall conform with the requirements of section B 501, and shall be designed, constructed and maintained so as to guard against fouling, clogging, and depositing of solids.

b—Plumbing systems shall be installed in such manner as not to weaken structural members nor cause damage or deterioration to any part of the building through fixture usage.

c—Plumbing systems shall be maintained in a sanitary and serviceable condition.

d—For implementation of the performance requirements for plumbing in this Part, see State Building Construction Code applicable to Plumbing.

B 502-2 (756.2)

Public Water Supply or Public Sewer:

When Deemed Available

a—The source of water supply for a dwelling shall be a public water supply system when such system is within 500 feet of the premises on which the building is located, measured along a street, and a connection may be made lawfully thereto.

b—The means of sewage disposal for a dwelling shall be a public sanitary or combined sewer system when it is within 500 feet of the premises on which the building is located, measured along a street, and a connection may be made lawfully thereto.

c—The means for storm water disposal shall be a public storm or combined sewer system when it is within 500 feet of

Equipment Requirements

the premises on which the building is located, measured along a street, and a connection may be made lawfully thereto.

B 502-3 (756.3)

Water Supply

a—Pure and wholesome water from an approved source shall be available at all times on the premises of every multiple dwelling. The domestic water supply system of the multiple dwelling shall be connected to such approved source and shall not be subject to contamination. When supplied from a public source, the potable water supply system shall not be connected to private or unsafe water supplies.

b—Water supply systems shall be designed and installed so as to provide at all times a supply of water to plumbing fixtures, devices and appurtenances in sufficient volume and at pressures adequate to enable them to function satisfactorily and without undue noise under all normal conditions of use.

c—Water supply systems shall be designed and installed so that water used for purposes of cooling, heating, or processing will not be reintroduced into the domestic water supply system nor be distributed through such equipment to plumbing fixtures.

d—Hot water supply systems shall be provided with safety devices arranged to relieve hazardous pressures and excessive temperatures.

e—Water services for standpipe or automatic sprinkler systems shall be designed and installed so as to provide at all times a supply of water in sufficient volume to enable them to function satisfactorily.

f—The source of water supply for any standpipe system or automatic sprinkler system shall be of adequate capacity and reliability.

B 502-4 (756.4)

Sewage Drainage System

a—Every plumbing fixture shall be drained to a sewage drainage system and such system shall be connected to a public sewer or to an adequate and approved system of sewage disposal.

b—Every multiple dwelling shall have access on the premises to an adequate and approved means of sewage disposal.

Equipment Requirements

c—Where a public sewer is not available, a system shall be provided to receive and dispose of sewage without health hazard or nuisance.

d—Sewage or other waste which may be deleterious to surface or subsurface waters, shall not be discharged into the ground or into a waterway unless it has first been rendered harmless through subjection to treatment in accordance with generally accepted standards.

e—Where a drainage system may be subject to backwater, suitable provision shall be made to prevent its overflow into the building.

f—Any substance which will clog the pipes, produce explosive mixtures, destroy the pipes or their joints or interfere unduly with the sewage disposal process, shall be prevented from entering the building drainage system.

g—Liquid waste from a fixture or drain provided in a location where such waste at times would contain volatile, flammable oil, shall be conveyed by an independent drainage system equipped with an approved device for intercepting such substances from liquid wastes; the liquid wastes, after passing through the intercepting device, may be discharged into the building drain or sewer.

h—Liquid waste from a fixture or drain provided in a location where grease or other substances at times would be introduced into the system in quantities that could produce pipe stoppage or hinder sewage disposal, shall be conveyed by a fixture drain equipped with an approved device for intercepting and separating such substances from the liquid waste before it is discharged into a branch or main drainage pipe in the system.

i—Each fixture directly connected to the sewage drainage system shall be equipped with a water seal trap.

j—Adequate cleanouts shall be provided and arranged so that the pipes may be readily cleaned.

k—The drainage system shall be designed so as to provide adequate circulation of air in all pipes in order that siphonage, aspiration, or pressure will not cause a loss of trap seal under ordinary conditions of use.

l—Each vent terminal shall extend to the outer air and be installed so as to minimize the possibilities of clogging, frost closure, the return of foul air to the building, or the creation of a nuisance to adjacent premises.

Equipment Requirements

m—Whenever a structure is to be built higher than the vent terminal of an adjacent building and thereby adversely affects the vent system of the adjacent building, or when such vent is a potential nuisance to the occupants of the higher structure, then the owner of the higher structure shall at his expense and with the consent of the owner of the adjacent building, cause such vent to be extended or altered to correct the condition.

n—Whenever a new vent terminal is to be installed adjacent to an existing higher building, the proposed vent terminal shall be installed by, and at the expense of, the owner of the lower building, in conformity with section B 502-41, including any necessary extension of the vent terminal to a location sufficiently remote so as to prevent the creation of a foul air nuisance to occupants of the existing higher building.

o—Drains provided for fixtures, devices, appliances, or apparatus containing food, water, sterile goods or similar materials, shall be equipped with air breaks, adequate to prevent contamination of such contents from any possible backup of sewage through the direct or indirect drainage piping.

p—Drains provided for fixtures, devices, appliances or apparatus which have interior surfaces not readily accessible to permit effective cleaning, shall be indirectly connected.

q—Horizontal drainage piping shall not be located directly above nonpressure water-supply tanks, manholes of pressure water-supply tanks, or floor areas used for the manufacture, preparation, packaging, storage or display of food unless a watertight barrier is provided to intervene between the piping and such tanks or space immediately below.

B 502-5 (756.5)

Storm Drainage System

a—Roofs and paved areas, including yards and courts, shall be drained. Storm drainage shall be conveyed to an adequate and approved system of storm water disposal where available. Storm drains shall be discharged in such manner that water will not flow onto sidewalks.

b—Where a drainage system may be subject to backwater, suitable provision shall be made to prevent overflow into the building.

c—Leaders and gutters, if used, shall be constructed of noncombustible material, except that wood leaders and gut-

Equipment Requirements

ters may be used for buildings not more than three stories high.

**B 502-6
(756.6)**

Minimum Plumbing Facilities

a—Multiple dwellings shall be provided with plumbing systems designed to dispose of the sewage from all fixtures and to furnish cold water to every water closet, and hot and cold water to every sink, laundry tray, automatic laundry washing machine, lavatory, bathtub and shower required therein.

b—There shall be provided within each dwelling unit, plumbing fixtures consisting of at least:

- One kitchen sink,
- One water closet,
- One bathtub or shower, and
- One lavatory.

c—Where multiple dwellings contain sleeping accommodations arranged as individual rooms or suites, for each multiple of six sleeping rooms or fraction thereof, there shall be provided plumbing fixtures consisting of at least:

- One water closet,
- One bathtub or shower, and
- One lavatory.

Motels may have such plumbing facilities provided in another building within 50 feet of, and on the same premises with, such motel.

d—Where multiple dwellings contain sleeping accommodations arranged as a dormitory, for each multiple of fifteen persons or fraction thereof so accommodated, there shall be provided and located adjacent thereto, plumbing fixtures consisting of at least:

- One water closet,
- One bathtub or shower, and
- One lavatory.

e—Urinals may be substituted in men's toilet rooms for not more than one third of the required number of water closets.

f—There shall be provided within each dwelling unit, not designed for use primarily by transients, at least one laundry tray or automatic laundry washing machine, or in lieu thereof there shall be provided in a readily accessible location within a general laundry room at least one two-compartment laundry

Equipment Requirements

tray for each ten dwelling units or one automatic laundry washing machine for each twenty dwelling units. Such laundry room shall be located within the building and shall be accessible from within the building, except that in multiple dwellings not more than two stories in height accessibility from within the building is not required where access is not more than 100 feet, along a path of paved walkways, from the exterior entrance serving one or more dwelling units.

g—Every kitchen serving public dining spaces shall have installed therein at least one lavatory for the personal use of kitchen employees.

h—Where food or drink is served in public or employee dining places, and the dishes, glasses, or cutlery for such service are to be reused, there shall be at least one machine or 3-compartment sink of suitable type for the effective washing and sanitizing of such articles before reuse. Cold water need not be supplied to such machines and sinks.

¹⁹⁸⁰ i—Facilities for bathers at swimming pools shall be in accordance with New York State Health Department regulations in Part 6 of the State Sanitary Code.

j—Privies, privy vaults and outhouses shall be permitted only for temporary use in connection with new building construction. Such facilities shall be maintained in a sanitary and serviceable condition. Prior to the occupancy of a multiple dwelling, such facilities and the sewage remaining therefrom shall be removed and the area cleaned, disinfected, and filled with clean earth.

B 502-7 (756.7)

Plumbing Fixtures

a—Plumbing fixtures shall be made of smooth non-absorbent material and shall be free from concealed fouling surfaces.

b—Plumbing fixtures shall be so spaced as to be reasonably accessible for their intended use.

c—Plumbing fixtures shall be located in spaces that are accessible, lighted, and ventilated.

d—Water closets, urinals, showers, and bathtubs shall be located only in toilet rooms or bathrooms provided with waterproof floors and with waterproofing extending 6 inches or more above the floor.

e—Water closets, urinals, showers, and bathtubs shall not be located on the next floor directly above space used for

Equipment Requirements

manufacture, preparation, packaging, storage, or display of food, except they may be so located if an additional watertight barrier is provided to intervene between the toilet room or bathroom floor and such space immediately below.

1980

B 502-8 (756.8)

Swimming Pools

a—Swimming pools shall conform with the requirements of section B 501 and the New York State Health Department regulations in Part 6 of the State Sanitary Code.

b—Equipment containing gases or disinfectants capable of giving off irritating, toxic, or flammable fumes shall be located in ventilated rooms.

B 502-9 (756.9)

Water Supply Tanks

a—Water supply tanks shall be designed and constructed so as to be watertight, verminproof, and rodentproof, resistant to corrosion, and capable of withstanding the pressures under which they are to operate.

b—Tanks shall be provided with safe and easy means of access for inspection.

c—The capacity of any single tank in or on a building shall not exceed 30,000 gallons. Where tanks are located on flat roofs and the total capacity exceeds 30,000 gallons, drain pipes from the tanks shall discharge so as to distribute water over separate drainage areas of the roof.

d—Supports for tanks shall be of noncombustible construction.

e—Tanks and their supports shall not be used to support equipment or structures other than for tank use, except where specially designed for such other use.

f—Means shall be provided for emptying water supply tanks. The emptying pipe and valve shall be of a size to permit quick emptying, shall be located and arranged so as to prevent damage from water discharged, and shall be connected through an air break to the drainage system.

g—Gravity tanks shall be provided with overflow pipes at least one pipe size larger than the filling pipe.

h—Tanks shall not be located over openings in floor or roof construction. Openings in floor or roof for piping are permitted provided they are made watertight.

Equipment Requirements

i—Potable water supply tanks for domestic supply and standpipe or automatic sprinkler systems shall be designed and installed to furnish water in sufficient quantity and pressure for such systems.

j—A tank used to supply water both to a domestic system and a standpipe or automatic sprinkler system, shall have the outlet for the domestic supply located a sufficient distance above the bottom of the tank to maintain the minimum reserve required for fire protection service.

k—Potable water supply tanks which supply water for domestic supply and also for standpipe and automatic sprinkler systems, shall have the outlet for the standpipe system located a sufficient distance above the bottom of the tank to maintain the minimum reserve required for the sprinkler system.

**B 503
(757)**

FUEL GAS PIPING EQUIPMENT AND SYSTEMS

**B 503-1
(757.1)**

General Requirements

a—Fuel gas piping systems shall be in conformity with the requirements of section B 501.

b—Fuel gas piping systems shall be of approved materials resistant to the corrosive effects of gases conveyed by them. Systems shall be designed and installed so as to remain gastight, safe and operative under conditions of use.

c—Gas piping shall not be installed in cinder fill or other corrosive material unless protected against corrosion.

d—Cleanouts shall be provided where condensate, dirt or other foreign matter may collect.

e—Fuel gas piping and equipment shall not be located in ducts, chutes, chimneys, flues, hoistways, stairways, or exits.

f—Fuel gas piping systems shall be designed and installed so as to provide a supply of gas sufficient to meet the maximum expected demand of the installed gas burning appliances connected thereto.

**B 503-2
(757.2)**

Shutoff Valves

a—Gas piping systems supplies from utility mains shall have at least two accessible means for shutting off all gas supply. One means of shutoff shall be located outside and at a safe distance from the building, and shall be suitably pro-

Equipment Requirements

ected against unauthorized use, and the other shall be located ahead of the meter and as close as practicable to the point of service entrance.

b—An easily accessible shutoff valve or cock shall be provided in the piping in close proximity to, and ahead of, every gas appliance or outlet for a gas hose connection.

**B 503-3
(757.3)**

Service Equipment for Gas Supplied from

Utility Mains

a—Gas meters shall be located in spaces that are dry, well ventilated, readily accessible, free from steam or chemical fumes and protected against extreme heat. Gas meters shall be located as near as practicable to the point of entry of the gas service. Gas meters shall not be installed in a stairway, nor in any public hall above the cellar, nor above the lowest story if there is no cellar. Gas meters shall not be installed in spaces designed for the storage of paints or flammable products.

b—Gas services, gas meters, and gas pressure regulators shall be located so that they are protected from damage. Such equipment shall be sufficiently removed or separated from the bottom termination of a stairway so as not to constitute a potential hazard.

**B 503-4
(757.4)**

Gas Refrigerators

a—Gas refrigerators shall be installed with clearance for ventilation.

b—Refrigerator parts serving as flues shall be resistant to the action of the products of combustion.

**B 503-5
(757.5)**

High Pressure Gas

a—Buildings supplied with gas from utility mains at pressures exceeding 1 psi gage shall have all exterior wall openings below grade and within 10 feet of the gas service pipe made gastight. Where such openings are provided for service pipes, the pipes shall be protected from damage by settlement or corrosion.

b—Any service connection supplying gas at a pressure in excess of 1 psi gage shall be provided with a device to reduce such pressure to not more than ½ psi gage prior to entering the meter, except where such service supplies equipment using gas at high pressures.

Equipment Requirements

B 503-6 (757.6)

Liquefied Petroleum Gas

a—Undiluted liquefied petroleum gas in liquid form shall not be conveyed through piping equipment and systems in buildings.

b—Liquefied petroleum gas shall not be vaporized by devices utilizing open flame or open electrical coil.

c—Where two or more containers are installed, connection shall be arranged so that containers can be replaced without shutting off the flow of gas to equipment.

d—Containers shall be designed, stored, and located so as not to be a hazard to the premises served, or to the surrounding property.

e—Gas service entrance shall be above ground, and shall be protected from damage by settlement or corrosion. Exposed exterior wall openings located below and within 5 feet horizontal distance of gas service entrance shall be made gastight.

f—Liquefied petroleum gases shall be odorized so that the presence of gas will be recognizable by a distinctive odor when the concentration is equal to, or greater than, one fifth the lower limit of combustibility.

g—Systems shall be provided with safety devices to relieve excessive pressures, and shall be arranged so that the discharge terminates at a safe location.

h—Systems supplied from containers exceeding 125 gallons of capacity shall have at least two accessible means for shutting off the gas at the main supply. Shutoff valves shall be located in conformity with the requirements of section B 503-2a.

i—Systems supplied from containers not exceeding 125 gallons of capacity shall have at least one accessible means for shutting off the gas. Such means shall be located outside the building.

B 504 (758)

HEATING

B 504-1 (758.1)

General Requirements

a—Heating systems shall conform to the requirements of section B 501.

b—Multiple dwellings intended for occupancy between the fifteenth day of September and the thirty-first day of May of

Equipment Requirements

the following year shall be provided with heating equipment designed to maintain the temperatures listed in table B 504-1 at a distance of 2 feet and more from exterior walls, and at a level of 5 feet above the floor, in habitable spaces, kitchenettes, bathrooms and toilet rooms. The capability of the heating equipment to maintain such indoor temperature shall be based on the average of the recorded annual minimum outside temperatures for the locality.

c—Equipment for heating shall not be required for open deck structures.

d—Swimming pools, shower and dressing rooms, shall have heating equipment designed and installed so as not to be a hazard owing to accidental contact.

TABLE B 504-1. (I-757)—MINIMUM TEMPERATURE REQUIREMENTS

Occupancy group	Temperature in degrees F.
B1	70° ¹
B2	75°
B3	75°

1. Minimum temperature shall be 75° for dwelling units and sleeping rooms required to be equipped with facilities for the physically handicapped; see tables B 214-1a and 1b.

B 504-2 (758.2) Heat Producing Equipment

B 504-2.1 (758.2a) Combustion Space

Fuel-burning heat producing equipment shall have combustion space designed and constructed to withstand the maximum temperature attained and to operate efficiently at the expected loads.

B 504-2.2 (758.2b) Smoke Control

Fuel-burning heat producing equipment shall be designed and installed so that the emission or discharge into the atmosphere of smoke, dust, particles, fly ash, odors or other products of combustion will not create a nuisance or be detrimental to the health, comfort, safety or property of any person.

B 504-2.3 (758.2c) Warm Air Heating

Ducts and other air handling equipment used for heating shall

Equipment Requirements

conform to the requirements of such equipment used for ventilating purposes.

B 504-2.4 (758.2d) Prohibited Locations for Heat Producing Equipment

a—Fuel-burning equipment or ash removal equipment shall not be installed in spaces intended for the storage or use of paints, paper or trash.

b—Fuel-burning water heaters shall not be located in sleeping rooms, bathrooms or toilet rooms.

c—Fuel-burning equipment which may be a potential hazard to occupants in the event of accidental contact shall not be installed in occupied spaces.

B 504-2.5 (758.2e) Fuel Supply Connection

Fuel supply connection to heat producing equipment shall be made with pipe or tubing of solid metal or with means conforming to the requirements of generally accepted standards.

B 504-2.6 (758.2f) Installation and Clearance

a—Heat producing equipment shall be of the fixed type.

b—Where heat producing equipment is installed on, or adjacent to, combustible materials, the location, insulation, clearance, and the control of the equipment shall be such that the temperature on the surface of the combustible materials will not exceed 175°F.

B 504-2.7 (758.2g) Air Supply

a—Direct-fired heat producing equipment and the enclosure in which it is located shall be provided with a supply of air adequate both for complete combustion at the rated gross output of the equipment and for the ventilation of the enclosure to prevent the accumulation of heat. Where such enclosure contains ventilating equipment, the requirements for air supply shall conform to section B 508-3.2c.

b—Rooms containing fuel burning equipment having an individual or combined rated gross capacity of 250,000 Btu per hour or less, may have such air supply provided by means of one or more openings to the exterior, or by means of fixed openings to interior spaces which open to the exterior. Where the combined rated gross capacity exceeds 250,000 Btu per hour, the air supply shall be provided by means of fixed openings to the exterior.

Equipment Requirements

c—Openings shall be adequate to provide air for combustion and ventilation for the simultaneous operation of all fuel burning equipment within rooms.

B 504-2.8 (758.2h) Removal of Products of Combustion

a—Equipment for burning solid or liquid fuel shall be connected to suitable chimneys or flues or vented as set forth in paragraph c of this section, and shall not be connected to gasvents.

b—Gas-fired space heating equipment shall be connected to a suitable chimney, flue or gasvent, or shall be provided with a mechanical draft system conforming to the requirements of generally accepted standards, or shall be vented as set forth in paragraph c of this section. Gas-fired equipment other than space heaters shall be vented to the exterior when the discharge of products of combustion into the space where the equipment is installed would be a hazard.

c—Equipment having an integral venting system in which the inlet for combustion air and the outlet for products of combustion are connected directly to the exterior shall be permitted without a chimney, flue or gasvent.

d—Equipment requiring mechanical draft shall have an interlock to shut off fuel supply when the venting system is inoperative.

e—Where a gasvent is permitted, a permanent sign stating the type of heating equipment which may be connected to the gasvent shall be provided and located where the gasvent passes through the wall or ceiling.

B 504-2.9 (758.2i) Safety Devices

a—Equipment capable of developing hazardous pressures or temperatures shall be provided with means to safely control such pressures and temperatures.

b—Controls for the safe operation of automatically operated heat producing equipment shall be provided to function as follows:

When failure or interruption of flame or ignition occurs, the fuel supply shall be cut off.

When a predetermined temperature or pressure is exceeded, the input of additional heat shall be prevented or reduced to a safe rate.

When the water level in a steam boiler drops below a

Equipment Requirements

predetermined level, the fuel supply shall be cut off.

When failure or interruption of pilot light or main burner of liquefied petroleum gas equipment occurs, the fuel supply to such pilot light and main burner shall be cut off.

c—Heat producing equipment containing two or more automatically operated burners within a combustion space shall be arranged so that the operation of the safety device for any burner will control the operation of all burners within such combustion space.

B 504-2.10 Insulation

(758.2j)

a—Insulation provided to reduce the rate of heat flow through building construction shall conform to the requirements of section B 501.

b—Insulation on surfaces of heat producing equipment shall be of noncombustible materials.

B 504-2.11 Expansion Tanks

(758.2k)

Hot water heating systems shall be provided with expansion tanks or other means to allow for the expansion of water in the system.

B 504-2.12 Warm Air Heating

(758.2l)

a—Warm air heating systems shall conform to the requirements for ventilating systems as set forth in section B 508-3.

b—Registers or grilles shall not be permitted in the floors of required exits.

B 504-2.13 Heating of Garages

(758.2m)

a—Fuel-burning equipment for garages shall be located in heater rooms as set forth in section B 402-4.6d, except that suspended type unit heaters located in the vehicle storage space, shall be permitted in stories at or above grade where elevated 8 feet or more above the floor level. Floor mounted heating equipment having a rated gross capacity of less than 250,000 Btu per hour shall be permitted in a garage and in spaces opening directly into such garage in stories at or above grade providing they are installed on a noncombustible platform not less than 18 inches above the floor.

Equipment Requirements

b—Garages heated by recirculated air shall be provided with a mechanical means of air handling designed to introduce a sufficient quantity of fresh air to prevent the accumulation of vapors or gases near the floor. Recirculated air shall not be taken from stories below grade level. For stories above grade level, openings for return air shall be at least 18 inches above floors.

**B 505
(759)**

CHIMNEYS, FLUES, AND GASVENTS

**B 505-1
(759.1)**

General Requirements

a—Chimneys, flues, gasvents and their supports shall be designed and constructed so as to be structurally safe, durable, smoketight, noncombustible, and capable of withstanding the action of flue gases without softening, cracking, corroding, or spalling.

b—Such facilities shall effectively convey the products of combustion to the outer air.

c—Masonry chimneys, except approved prefabricated chimneys, shall have noncombustible foundations.

d—Flue linings shall be capable of withstanding the action of flue gas without softening, cracking, corroding, or spalling at the temperature to which they will be subjected. Flue linings are not required for chimneys capable of withstanding the action of flue gases at the design temperatures.

e—Chimneys without flue linings and metal smokestacks shall be sufficiently separated from building construction so as not to constitute a potential hazard.

f—Openings for smoke pipes or gasvent connections shall be provided with means for easy connection without restriction of flue.

g—No flue shall have smoke-pipe or gasvent connections in more than one story of a building.

h—Fuel burning equipment and fireplaces located in different tenancies shall not be connected to the same flue.

i—Incinerator flues equipped with service openings shall not be used as flues for other fuel burning equipment.

Equipment Requirements

**B 505-2
(759.2)**

Draft

a—Chimneys, flues, and gasvents or other draft producing devices installed on fuel burning equipment, shall provide sufficient draft to develop the rated output of the connected equipment.

b—Gas-fired equipment operating on natural draft and connected to a chimney, flue or gasvent, shall be provided with a draft hood, except that draft hoods are not permitted on incinerators.

**B 505-3
(759.3)**

Fire Safety

Chimneys, flues, and gasvents shall be located, designed and constructed so that under conditions of use, the temperature of any combustible materials adjacent thereto, insulated therefrom or in contact therewith, does not exceed 175°F.

**B 505-4
(759.4)**

Spark Arresters

Any chimney or flue connected to an incinerator, and any chimney or flue which may emit sparks, shall be provided with a spark arrester of noncombustible construction. Spark arrester shall have sufficient total clear area to permit unrestricted passage of flue gases. Openings in spark arrester shall be of such size as to prevent passage of embers and to minimize clogging by soot.

**B 505-5
(759.5)**

Location of Outlets

The horizontal distance separation of outlets of chimneys, flues, and gasvents from windows or other exterior openings and the vertical distance of such outlets from unprotected combustible material on the same or adjacent premises, and from the point where the flue passes through the roof, shall be in accordance with the following table:

Equipment Requirements

TABLE B 505-5. (I-759)—LOCATION OF OUTLETS
Minimum distance in feet

Distance from other construction	Type of Outlet		
	Incinerator flues	Other flues	Gasvent
Horizontal distance to windows or other exterior opening where the openable portion is at a higher level and less than 30 feet above the flue outlet	(1)	20 ¹	15
Minimum vertical distance above the highest point on the roof where the flue passes through	10	3 ²	2 ³
Vertical distance above construction where the horizontal distance to the construction is:			
Within 10 feet		2	2 ³
Within 20 feet	2		

1. Outlet of incinerator flues and flues from fuel burning equipment having a rated gross capacity exceeding 1,000,000 Btu per hour, shall be carried above the top of windows or other exterior openings in walls within a horizontal distance of 50 feet.
2. Where a roof can be reached by a stairway, minimum distance shall be 8 feet.
3. Reduced heights are permitted for gasvents not less than 8 feet from a vertical wall when tested for adequate performance in conformity with generally accepted standards.

B 505-6 **(759.6)** **Extending Existing Chimneys, Flues, and Gasvents**

a—Where a structure is built higher than an existing chimney, flue, or gasvent on the same or adjacent premises, the minimum distance of windows, other exterior openings and unprotected combustible material of such structure from the outlet of the chimney, flue, or gasvent shall be in accordance with the applicable requirements of section B 505-5.

b—Where a structure is built higher than an existing chimney, flue, or gasvent on the same or adjacent premises and causes a deficiency in the draft of heat producing equipment connected thereto, or where a chimney, flue, or gasvent is a potential nuisance to the occupants of such higher structure, then the owner of such higher structure shall, at his expense, and with the consent of the owner of the adjacent building, cause the existing chimney, flue, or gasvent to be extended or altered to correct the conditions.

c—Where a new chimney, flue, or gasvent is to be erected adjacent to an existing higher building, the proposed chimney, flue, or gasvent shall be installed by the owner of the lower building in conformity with section B 505 and may, at his expense, and with the consent of the owner of the higher building, be attached to such higher building.

Equipment Requirements

**B 506
(760)**

INCINERATORS AND REFUSE CHUTES

**B 506-1
(760.1)**

General Requirements

a—Incinerators shall conform to the applicable requirements of sections B 501, B 504, and B 505. They shall be of adequate capacity for the intended use.

b—Incinerators shall be equipped with means for burning auxiliary fuel in sufficient quantity to assure complete combustion of refuse.

c—Incinerator combustion space shall be designed and constructed so as to be durable and gastight.

d—Incinerators shall be equipped with means for regulating the draft and for minimizing the emission of fly ash, smoke, dust, particles, and odors.

e—Every flue serving an incinerator shall be provided with a substantially constructed spark arrester.

f—Every incinerator shall be connected to a suitable non-combustible chimney, smokestack, or flue. Flue-fed incinerators are not permitted.

g—Chutes for dropping refuse shall be vertical, of noncombustible construction, and shall have a smooth finish on the inside to provide free passage of refuse without clogging.

h—Incinerator rooms may contain boilers, furnaces, and heating equipment, but shall not be used for any other purpose.

**B 506-2
(760.2)**

Service Openings

a—Service openings shall be readily accessible to the building occupants.

b—Service openings shall be equipped with metal, self-closing charging devices of fire-resistive construction as set forth in section B 402-4.8d. No part of the charging devices shall project into a refuse chute.

c—Durable signs with plainly legible letters prohibiting disposal of highly flammable substances in incinerators shall be provided near service openings.

**B 506-3
(760.3)**

Incinerator Rooms and Refuse Rooms

Openings in refuse rooms used to charge refuse into incinerators shall be provided with charging doors designed

Equipment Requirements

and installed so as to minimize the heat transmitted to the refuse room and to prevent tampering by unauthorized persons.

**B 507
(761)**

ELECTRICAL WIRING AND EQUIPMENT

**B 507-1
(761.1)**

General Requirements

- ¹⁹⁷⁷ a—Electrical wiring and equipment shall conform to the requirements of section B 501, and shall be designed and installed so as not to be a potential source of ignition of combustible material or a potential source of electrical hazard. Terminal connections and connections involving dissimilar metals shall be made in an approved manner.
- b—Electrical wiring and equipment shall be firmly secured to the surface on which it is mounted.
- c—Electrical wiring and equipment installed in damp or wet locations or where exposed to explosive or flammable gases, or to excessive temperatures, shall be of a type approved for the purpose and location.
- d—Exposed live parts of electrical equipment operating at 50 volts or more shall be guarded against accidental contact by enclosure, elevated position, or other suitable means.
- e—Electrical wiring and equipment shall be grounded or otherwise protected by insulation, isolation, or guarding so as to minimize the danger of high voltages from lightning or other causes.
- f—Electrical equipment which in ordinary operation produces arcs, sparks, flames or molten metal, shall be enclosed unless separated and isolated from all combustible material.
- g—Where the service entrance conductors have a rated capacity of 200 amperes or more or where the voltage between such conductors exceeds 600 volts, a room or enclosure shall be provided to be used for electric service, metering and main distribution equipment. Such room or enclosure may also contain gas or water meters and shall be of ample size to provide proper clearance for the equipment and shall be ventilated as required in section B 508.3.3.
- h—Temporary wiring and equipment, during construction, shall be installed so as not to be a hazard, and shall be protected from damage. Separate circuits shall be provided for light and power, except that small portable power tools may be supplied from lighting circuits. Circuits supplying lighting

Equipment Requirements

outlets in stairways and shafts shall not supply any other outlets. Conductors within 7 feet of the floor level, or in hoistways, shall be installed in raceway, or otherwise suitably protected. Overcurrent protective devices and switches not integral with motors shall be installed in cabinets or boxes. Frames of motors, portable tools, and metal cabinets and boxes shall be grounded.

i—Metal roofs, veneers, and siding on buildings shall be made electrically continuous and shall be grounded as recommended in the generally accepted standards.

B 507-2 **Artificial Lighting** **(761.2)**

B 507-2.1 **General Requirements** **(761.2a)**

a—Multiple dwellings and accessory structure shall be wired for electricity, and lighting equipment shall be installed throughout to provide adequate illumination for the intended use of each space. Electricity shall be obtained from public utility or private sources, except as otherwise set forth in sections B 507-2.2 and B 510-2.4.

b—During occupancy, electric light of intensity sufficient for safe travel shall be provided throughout exits, for garages, for spaces to which the public has access, and for spaces in which fire protection equipment is installed. Switches controlling such light shall be provided in a central location and, if accessible to other than authorized persons, shall be designed so as to be protected against unauthorized use.

c—There shall be a switch or other means for controlling a light in each dwelling unit or room for transient occupancy near the point of entrance to such unit or room.

B 507-2.2 **Emergency Lighting** **(761.2b)**

a—Emergency lighting shall be provided in multiple dwellings to illuminate adequately assembly space, passenger elevators and exits, in conformity with table B 507.

b—Emergency lighting shall be designed and installed so as to permit occupants to make their way safely out of the building in the event of failure of the normal lighting.

c—Emergency lighting shall be furnished through an independent electrical wiring system supplied from a main source, and from an auxiliary source.

d—Means shall be provided for automatically transferring

Equipment Requirements

the emergency lighting and power supply from the main source to the auxiliary source within 15 seconds in the event of failure of the main source.

- ¹⁹⁷⁶ e—The auxiliary source shall have a capacity sufficient to supply and maintain the total emergency lighting load for a period of at least 90 minutes, with not more than a 12½ per cent reduction from rated system voltage.

¹⁹⁸⁰ **TABLE B 507. (I-761)—LOCATIONS WHERE EMERGENCY LIGHTING IS REQUIRED**

Occupancy	Location	Buildings or spaces more than:
B1 — permanent	exits	10 stories
B1 — transient	exits	3 stories
B2	exits	1 story
B3	exits	2 stories
All	accessory assembly space more than 99 persons	all
All	passenger elevators	all

B 507-2.3 **Exit and Directional Signs** **(761.2c)**

a—Exits in multiple dwellings shall be provided with exit and directional signs, visible from the approach to the exits, except that such signs shall not be required in group B1 occupancy in those portions of a building which contain dwelling units only, or in which exit from sleeping rooms is directly to the outside.

b—Directional signs shall be provided at locations from which the exit doorway is not readily discernible.

c—Such signs shall be worded in plainly legible block letters with the word **EXIT** for exit signs and the words **TO EXIT** with a suitable pointer or arrow indicating the direction of exit, for directional signs. Letters for signs shall be conspicuous, readily discernible, and at least 6 inches high except that for internally illuminated signs the height of such letters shall be at least 4½ inches.

d—Exit and directional signs shall be illuminated either externally or internally by electric lights, and shall be kept il-

Equipment Requirements

illuminated at all times when the building is occupied. Where a system of emergency lighting is provided, electric lights illuminating exit and directional signs shall be supplied with current from the emergency lighting system. When such system is not provided, current shall be supplied from a separate circuit or circuits controlled from a central location. Circuits supplying exit and directional sign outlets shall supply no other outlets.

B 508 (762) **REFRIGERATION, AIR CONDITIONING AND MECHANICAL VENTILATION**

B 508-1 (762.1) **Refrigeration**

B 508-1.1 (762.1a) **General Requirements**

Mechanical refrigeration equipment shall conform to the requirements of section B 501, and shall be designed and installed so as not to be a potential source of hazard from excessive pressure or refrigerant leakage.

B 508-1.2 (762.1b) **Location**

Refrigerating equipment shall not be permitted in exits, except that self-contained refrigerating units shall be permitted in lobbies provided that they do not obstruct or diminish the width of exits, and the refrigerant contained in any such unit is limited so as not to constitute a potential hazard.

B 508-1.3 (762.1c) **Materials**

Refrigerating equipment shall be of materials resistant to the corrosive effects of refrigerant conveyed by them, so as to remain gastight and safe. All parts of such equipment shall be designed, constructed, and installed so as not to exceed the allowable working stresses of the material used.

B 508-1.4 (762.1d) **Refrigerants**

- a—Refrigerants shall be classified as to their flammable or toxic qualities.
- b—Refrigerants that are highly flammable or toxic shall not be used in multiple dwellings.
- c—In direct refrigerating systems using nonflammable and nontoxic refrigerants, the amount of refrigerant contained in

Equipment Requirements

each system shall not exceed the amount that in case of leakage may be contained safely in the space in which the equipment is located, or in the spaces in which the refrigerant would be dissipated.

d—Direct systems using refrigerants that are flammable or toxic shall not be used for air conditioning purposes.

e—Systems containing refrigerants exceeding the limit stated in paragraph c of this section shall be of the indirect type using chilled water or nontoxic, nonflammable brine as the cooling medium, and equipment containing the refrigerant shall be located in a machinery room.

B 508-1.5 Refrigerant Piping (762.1e)

a—Refrigerant piping shall not be located in ducts, chutes, exits, stairways, or hoistways, or where it may be subject to mechanical damage.

b—Direct systems containing nonflammable and nontoxic refrigerants may have refrigerant piping carried through floors, provided that where passing through spaces not served by the systems, such piping shall be enclosed in rigid, non-combustible material and shall be arranged so that leakage of gas will not enter such spaces.

B 508-1.6 Machinery Room (762.1f)

a—No fuel burning equipment shall be installed in any required refrigeration machinery room unless such equipment is provided with a suitable hood and flue capable of effectively removing the products of combustion to the outer air.

b—Refrigeration machinery rooms shall be used for no purpose other than for mechanical equipment.

c—Refrigeration machinery rooms shall have no openings that will permit the passage of escaping refrigerant to other parts of the building. Machinery rooms shall be provided with ventilation in accordance with generally accepted standards.

B 508-1.7 Safety Controls (762.1g)

Refrigerating equipment shall be provided with means to relieve excessive pressures safely.

B 508-1.8 Plumbing Connections (762.1h)

Plumbing connections for refrigerating equipment shall be in conformity with the requirements set forth in section B 502.

Equipment Requirements

B 508-2 (762.2)

Cooling Towers

a—Cooling towers in exterior locations inside fire limits shall be constructed of noncombustible materials, including the exterior finish, with the exception that the drip bars and drift eliminators may be of wood.

b—Cooling towers shall be designed, installed, and located so that when in operation noise, fog, or water spray will not cause a nuisance.

c—Outdoor cooling towers located on multiple dwellings shall permit access for fire fighting, and shall not constitute a fire hazard.

B 508-3 (762.3)

Ventilating Systems

B 508-3.1 (762.3a)

General Requirements

a—Ventilating systems shall be designed and installed so that the rapid spread of heat, flame, or smoke through the system will be prevented, and so that under conditions of use the temperature of any combustible material adjacent thereto, or in contact therewith, will not exceed 175°F.

b—Systems designed for exhaust ventilation of kitchens, kitchenettes, toilets, garages, ventilated vestibules for garages, heater rooms, and spaces where the exhaust may be toxic or irritating in nature, shall each discharge independently to the exterior.

c—Stairways, exits, hoistways, attics and shafts other than those used exclusively for ventilating purposes shall not be used as plenum chambers, except that corridors may be used to supply air to toilet rooms and sink closets which open directly to such corridors.

d—Ducts shall be securely fastened in place, and shall be firestopped as set forth in section B 402-5.1.

e—Material used for the insulation or soundproofing of ducts shall be noncombustible, except that slow-burning material may be used on the outside when the inside is subject to temperatures not exceeding 150°F.

f—Ducts and other air handling equipment shall be of noncombustible material. Material having a flame-spread rating of not over 25 without evidence of continued progressive combustion and a smoke developed rating of not over 50, may be used in accordance with the requirements of general-

Equipment Requirements

ly accepted standards except as set forth in section B 508-3.3c.

g—Filters shall be designed and installed so as not to constitute a fire or smoke hazard.

h—Ducts passing through or located within combustible construction shall be separated from such construction by a clearance of at least ½-inch or by a noncombustible insulating material at least ¼-inch thick.

i—Ducts passing through fire walls shall be equipped with fire doors as set forth in section B 402-4.8c. Ducts passing through other fire separations shall be protected as set forth in section B 402-4.8c, or be provided with other means to prevent the spread of heat, smoke or flame.

j—Plenum chambers or enclosures for ventilating purposes shall conform to the requirements for ducts.

k—Exhaust ducts operated by gravity or wind shall have no connection to other ducts, except that when they are the same length and serve the same story, such ducts may be combined. The capacity of wind-operated devices to exhaust the required air quantities shall be based on their performance when subjected to wind velocities of 4 miles per hour.

l—Ducts shall not be located between fire-protective material and structural members which are individually encased by such material, except that ducts are permitted in the concealed space between a continuous ceiling and beams or joists protected by such ceiling, provided that where they pass through fire separations, fire dampers are installed.

¹⁹⁸⁰ m—Air required for ventilation shall be taken from the exterior and where recirculated shall include an amount of exterior air equal to the quantities set forth in the applicable requirements of the State Energy Conservation Construction Code.

B 508-3.2 Air Intake and Exhaust Openings **(762.3b)**

a—Air intake and exhaust openings shall be designed, located, and installed so as not to constitute a hazard or nuisance, and so as to prevent the possibility of fire, smoke, fumes, or foreign matter being drawn into the system.

b—Ventilating systems shall be provided with adequate openings for incoming and outgoing air to obtain the required circulation. Intake openings shall provide air from an uncontaminated source.

Equipment Requirements

c—Where openings for mechanical exhaust are located in spaces that also contain fuel-burning equipment, there shall be provided fixed intake openings from the exterior to supply sufficient air so that the fuel-burning equipment is not adversely affected.

d—Exhaust openings shall be located so that the exhaust air will not create a nuisance.

B 508-3.3 Ventilation Requirements (762.3c)

a—Enclosures or spaces where heat, gases, vapors, or odors may accumulate and become a potential source of hazard or nuisance, shall be provided with adequate means of ventilation to remove such excess.

b—Public spaces shall be provided with means for obtaining air supply for the maximum number of persons for which such spaces are designed.

c—Cooking equipment in kitchens serving restaurants or public dining rooms shall be provided with mechanical exhaust systems which are not connected with any other exhaust system. Such systems shall conform to generally accepted standards, and shall be constructed with metal ducts, with openings of size to permit easy inspection and cleaning, with equipment or filters to prevent the entry of flammable materials into ducts, and designed and installed so that in the event of fire within the system the danger of spread to other parts of the building will be minimized. Where such exhaust systems have hoods with a total area exceeding 3 square feet, they shall also be provided with fixed-pipe fire extinguishing systems that are manually and automatically controlled.

d—Ventilating systems shall be designed and installed so that the air coming into contact with occupants is directed and is at a temperature or velocity that does not constitute a health hazard.

¹⁹⁸⁰ e—Mechanical ventilation shall be provided in accordance with the quantities set forth in the applicable requirements of the State Energy Conservation Construction Code.

¹⁹⁸⁰ f—Central mechanical ventilating systems for kitchens, kitchenettes and corridors shall be provided with controls that will permit automatic intermittent operation.

Equipment Requirements

B 508-3.4 **Air Flow** **(762.3d)**

Exhaust air from a dwelling unit or a space whose contents may emit odors, fumes, or vapors shall not be circulated to other dwelling units or to other occupied spaces within the building.

B 508-3.5 **Safety Controls** **(762.3e)**

a—Manually operated controls shall be provided to stop the operation of all central fan equipment. Such controls shall be conspicuously identified and in readily accessible locations outside the fan room.

b—Every system using recirculated air and serving an assembly space or more than one fire area or more than one story of a building, shall be provided with controls arranged so that under abnormal rise in temperature of the air in the system the fans causing normal circulation shall stop and require manual restart.

c—Every system for ventilating an assembly space shall be provided with an emergency switch conveniently located and with a durable sign giving instructions for shutting down the system in case of fire or smoke.

d—Where a ventilating system serves a space that is protected by a fire alarm, fire- and smoke-detecting or sprinkler system, there shall be provided a control that will automatically stop the ventilating fans of such space when the fire protection equipment is activated.

B 508-4 **Emergency Ventilation** **(762.4)**

a—Telephone rooms, pump rooms, and other places which require the attendance of an operator during a fire or other emergency, shall be provided with natural ventilation, or in lieu thereof, with an independent mechanical system for obtaining fresh air from outside the building. The mechanical system shall be capable of introducing outside air in sufficient quantity to minimize the effect of smoke from other parts of the building.

b—Required emergency ventilation shall be provided with a manual control in a conspicuous location near the exit, and with a durable sign giving instructions for starting the system.

c—Required emergency ventilation shall have a capacity to provide at least 10 air changes per hour.

Equipment Requirements

B 509 **(763)** **EQUIPMENT FOR FUEL OIL**

B 509-1 **(763.1)** **General Requirements**

Fuel oil shall be received, stored, and conveyed by means of fixed liquidtight equipment designed and installed in conformity with the requirements set forth in section B 501.

B 509-2 **(763.2)** **Storage Tanks**

a—Fuel oil storage tanks shall rest on noncombustible supports.

b—Tanks shall be protected against settling, sliding, or displacement because of buoyancy. Where located in areas subject to traffic, they shall be protected against physical damage.

c—Tanks shall be located at a safe distance from the property line and from spaces which are at an elevation lower than the top of the tank so as to reduce the potential hazard in the event of discharge of liquid.

d—Underground tanks shall be located so as not to receive any foundation load.

e—Tanks shall be provided with means for venting.

f—Tanks shall be designed and installed so as not to be a hazard to the premises served or the surrounding property.

B 509-3 **(763.3)** **Storage Tanks Inside of Buildings**

a—Fuel oil storage tanks inside of buildings shall be provided with liquid-level indicating devices of fixed vaportight construction.

b—Unenclosed fuel oil storage tanks shall not be located in garages exceeding 1000 square feet in area. In garages not exceeding 1000 square feet in area, capacity of such tanks shall not exceed 550 gallons.

c—Maximum capacity of fuel oil storage tanks shall be in accordance with table B 509-3c.

B 509-4 **(763.4)** **Piping**

a—Pipes for fuel oil entering buildings shall be protected from damage by settlement or corrosion.

b—Where such pipes enter a building below grade, all ex-

Equipment Requirements

TABLE B 509-3c. (I-763)—PERMISSIBLE MAXIMUM CAPACITY OF FUEL OIL STORAGE TANKS INSIDE OF BUILDINGS

Construction classification	Minimum fire-resistance rating of tank enclosure, in hours	Permissible maximum aggregate storage capacity, in gallons	Permissible maximum storage capacity of an individual tank, in gallons
Type 5	(1)	550	550
Type 1, 2, 3, 4	(1)	1,100 ²	550
Type 2, 3, 4	2	10,000	5,000
Type 1	2	15,000	10,000
Type 1, 2	4	50,000	25,000

1. No enclosure required where separated by a distance of at least 5 feet from an open flame or open electrical coil.

2. Valves shall be provided to limit capacity of tanks connected to an oil burner to 550 gallons at any one time.

terior wall openings below grade and within 10 feet of such pipe entrance shall be vaportight.

c—Such pipes having discharge outlets located within buildings shall be provided with remote control to stop the flow during fire or other emergency.

d—Filling, emptying, and venting of tanks shall be by means of fixed piping. Pipes to underground tanks shall be pitched toward tanks. Terminals of fill and vent pipes shall be located outside buildings at a safe distance from building openings.

B 510 (764) **FIRE PROTECTION EQUIPMENT**

B 510-1 (764.1) **General Requirements**

Fire protection equipment shall be provided as set forth in section B 406, and shall be in conformity with the requirements set forth in this section.

B 510-2 (764.2) **Fire Alarm Systems**

B 510-2.1 (764.2a) **General Requirements**

a—Fire alarm systems shall conform with the requirements of section B 501, and shall be designed and installed so as to warn all the occupants in the event of fire or other emergency.

b—The component parts of a fire alarm system shall be designed, made and assembled for fire alarm purposes, and so as not to require frequent major replacements.

Equipment Requirements

c—Fire alarm systems shall be under constant electrical supervision so that failure of the main power supply or an open or grounded circuit which prevents the normal operation of the system will be instantly and audibly indicated. Where such electrical supervision is impracticable for certain types of sounding devices, such as vibrating bells, such sounding devices shall be connected alternately on separate circuits and shall be equally distributed throughout the building.

d—Fire alarm systems required in group B1 occupancy other than hotels, lodging houses and dormitories and in group B3 occupancy shall activate a visible signal on the premises and simultaneously transmit a signal to the local fire department or approved central station. The visible signal shall be installed in an approved location and shall be provided with a durable sign, conspicuously located, directing procedure in the event of fire. Activation of audible alarm signals in the building shall be by authorized persons only.

e—Fire alarm systems required in group B2 occupancies shall be of the coded type.

f—Installation of presignal systems shall be permitted only in buildings where an authorized person is available at all times on the premises to receive the alarm and take proper action.

B 510-2.2 Manual Fire Alarm Boxes (764.2b)

a—Fire alarm systems shall have manually operated fire alarm signaling devices, mounted in durable boxes, and designed to transmit an alarm signal to the sounding devices on the premises.

b—There shall be at least one such box in each fire area.

c—Boxes shall be located in a public hall or passageway in the natural path of escape from fire and shall be accessible on every story without passing through a fire door.

d—Boxes shall be located so that the horizontal distance from any point on a story not divided into rooms or from any door opening out of a room or suite to the nearest box shall not exceed 200 feet.

e—Boxes shall be in a position and ready at all times to operate when actuated.

f—Boxes shall be identified and shall have a conspicuous exterior color.

g—Boxes shall be designated to be used only for fire protection purposes or other emergency.

Equipment Requirements

B 510-2.3 Sounding Devices

(764.2c)

a—Fire alarm systems shall be provided with sounding devices designed to sound a clear audible alarm signal that is distinct from all signals of other sounding devices used in the vicinity.

b—All fire alarm sounding devices within a building shall be of the same type.

c—A sufficient number of sounding devices shall be provided and so located that the alarm is audible in all parts of the building.

B 510-2.4 Electrical Requirements

(764.2d)

a—Fire alarm systems shall be supplied with electrical energy from a main source and, in case of failure of the main source, from an auxiliary source.

b—Circuits used for the transmission of alarms shall be used for fire protection or other emergency purposes only, and shall be arranged and installed so that there can be no interference with the operation of the sounding devices.

c—Electrical wiring shall be protected against corrosion, moisture, or mechanical damage. Wiring shall be protected by a metallic raceway or armor, except that such raceway or armor shall not be required for wiring installed at least 7 feet above the floor, provided the input to the circuit is limited to 100 volt-amperes, current does not exceed 5 amperes, and voltage does not exceed 50 volts.

d—Raceway and boxes containing fire alarm conductors shall not contain conductors used for any purpose other than fire protection.

B 510-2.5 Tests

(764.2e)

The trouble signal of fire alarm systems shall be tested daily, and all fire alarm boxes and sounding devices shall be tested at least once a month during periods of occupancy.

B 510-3 Fire- and Smoke-Detecting Systems

(764.3)

B 510-3.1 General Requirements

(764.3a)

a—Fire- and smoke-detecting systems shall conform with the requirements of section B 501, and shall be designed and installed so as to detect fire and smoke in its initial stage, and automatically to actuate an alarm.

Equipment Requirements

b—The component parts of a fire- and smoke-detecting system shall be designed, made and assembled for fire- and smoke-detecting purposes, and shall be reasonably free from false alarm possibilities. In spaces which may contain smoke, dust or products of combustion and cause false alarms, heat detectors are permitted in lieu of smoke detectors.

c—Fire- and smoke-detecting systems shall be provided with devices arranged to transmit an alarm signal to sounding devices located throughout the building.

B 510-3.2 Fire- and Smoke-Detecting Devices

(764.3b)

Fire- and smoke-detecting devices shall be located so that they are protected from damage and will operate without delay.

B 510-3.3 Manually Operated Fire Alarm Box

(764.3c)

Fire- and smoke-detecting systems shall be equipped with at least one manual fire alarm box located in a natural path of escape from fire to provide an auxiliary means for actuating the alarm system. Where practicable, such box shall be located on the grade story near the main exit.

B 510-3.4 Miscellaneous Requirements

(764.3d)

In addition to the regulations set forth herein for fire- and smoke-detecting systems, such systems shall also conform to the applicable requirements of sections B 510-2.1, B 510-2.3, B 510-2.4, and B 510-2.5.

B 510-4 Sprinkler Systems

(764.4)

B 510-4.1 General Requirements

(764.4a)

a—Sprinkler systems shall conform to the requirements of section B 501, and shall meet the requirements for light hazard conditions as defined in generally accepted standards.

b—Sprinkler systems shall, upon actuation by heat produced by fire, automatically distribute water upon the fire in sufficient quantities either to extinguish it entirely or confine it without spread.

¹⁹⁷⁶ c—The component parts of sprinkler systems shall be designed, constructed and assembled so as to function as a

Equipment Requirements

unified sprinkler system or as part of a combined standpipe and sprinkler system.

¹⁹⁷⁶ d—Connection to a sprinkler system for other than sprinkler or standpipe use is prohibited, except as provided in sections B 510-4.6 and B 510-4.8.

e—Sprinklers connected to a potable water supply system shall be designed and installed so that they will not cause pollution.

f—Piping shall be connected so that water from any designated source of supply can flow to any one or combination of risers to deliver its full rated capacity without excessive friction loss.

B 510-4.2 Water Supply **(764.4b)**

a—Sprinkler systems shall have at least one approved source of water supply of adequate pressure, capacity, and reliability.

¹⁹⁷⁶ b—Water pressure at the highest sprinkler shall be at least 15 psi gage for a pipe-schedule designed system, or 7 psi gage for a hydraulically designed system, when an amount of water is discharged which is equivalent to the flow from the probable maximum number of sprinkler heads that may operate during a fire.

c—Water supply shall be sufficient to maintain the required pressure for a minimum period of 20 minutes for the probable maximum number of sprinkler heads that may operate in a fire.

d—When connection to a reliable public water supply can furnish at the highest sprinkler a pressure of at least 5 psi gage, the balance of the required pressure may be supplied by an automatic pump. Such pump shall be designed and installed for fire service, shall be protected against possible interruption of service by fire, and shall be under constant electrical supervision with connection to transmit signals to an approved central station or to a trained fire brigade available at all times to receive the signals and take proper action.

e—Sprinkler systems of adjacent multiple dwellings may be connected from a common source of water supply provided such buildings are designed to remain permanently under a single ownership and provided the source is of sufficient capacity for the largest sprinkler system within any one building.

Equipment Requirements

B 510-4.3 Sprinkler Heads

(764.4c)

a—Sprinkler heads shall be located and arranged to spray all parts of the area to be protected, including closets and alcoves.

b—In locations where ceiling temperatures up to 100°F. prevail, the temperature at which sprinkler heads operate to discharge water shall be from 135°F. to 165°F.

c—In locations such as furnace, boiler and laundry rooms, where ceiling temperatures are over 100°F. but do not exceed 150°F., the temperature at which sprinkler heads operate to discharge water shall be from 175° to 212°F.

d—Sprinkler heads shall be located so that there is no interference with the effective distribution of water.

e—Luminous ceilings located above or below sprinkler heads shall be installed in conformity with sections B 403-3e and B 403-3f.

B 510-4.4 Fire Department Connections

(764.4d)

a—Fire department connections shall be required for sprinkler systems where there is a total of thirty-six or more sprinkler heads connected in any one building.

b—Fire department connections shall be of approved Siamese type to fit the equipment of the nearest local fire department that would respond to an alarm, shall be of corrosion-resistive metal, and shall be conspicuously identified for sprinkler use.

c—Fire department connections shall be located on a street front of the building accessible for fire department use without being a potential hazard.

d—Where the building faces or abuts more than one street, additional connections shall be provided so that at least one connection is located on each street frontage which is 50 feet or more in length, except that where the frontage is continuous only one connection shall be required.

B 510-4.5 Sprinkler Alarm

(764.4e)

a—A required sprinkler system in a multiple dwelling occupied by transients shall be equipped with automatic means for sounding an alarm audible throughout the building when there is a flow of water through any sprinkler head. In lieu of such an alarm, a signal shall be transmitted to the telephone switchboard or other approved central location in the

Equipment Requirements

building, provided a signal is also transmitted automatically to the local fire department or recognized central station.

b—Any valve controlling the water supply to a sprinkler head shall be provided with means for sealing in the open position, or in lieu thereof, there shall be provided a means to give warning of the closure of any valve controlling such water supply. The warning shall be an automatically operated alarm signal audible to the occupants or transmitted to an approved central station.

¹⁹⁷⁶ c—A required sprinkler system shall be equipped with a local alarm, except as otherwise provided in paragraph a of this section. Local alarm shall function so that the flow of water from the system equal to or greater than that from a single sprinkler head will result in the sounding of an audible alarm signal on the premises. In buildings six stories or less in height, such sounding devices shall be audible in all parts of the building. In buildings seven stories or more in height, such sounding devices shall be audible on the fire floor, the floor below and the floor above the fire floor.

d—Tanks supplying sprinkler systems shall be provided with means to transmit an alarm for signaling a high or low water level in gravity tanks, or a high or low pressure in pressure tanks. For gravity tanks, in lieu of such alarm, a water-level indicating device at an approved central location shall be provided. Alarms shall be electrically operated and shall transmit signals to an approved central station or approved central location in the building where trained personnel are available at all times to receive the signal and take proper action.

B 510-4.6 Domestic Water Service Supply from (764.4f) Sprinkler System Service

a—Sprinkler systems shall be maintained for sprinkler use only, except that a domestic water service connection may be made from the largest diameter of sprinkler water service connection to the water main, provided the domestic service connection is not more than 1 ¼ inches for a 4-inch sprinkler service connection to the water main, and not more than 2 inches for a 6-inch or larger sprinkler service connection to the water main. Where the size of the domestic water connection exceeds that set forth above, the water service shall be deemed inadequate for supplying a sprinkler system but may be used to supply a special sprinkler installation.

Equipment Requirements

b—Domestic water supply connection shall be made so as to be free of the hazard of potential pollution from the sprinkler system.

B 510-4.7 (764.4g) Special Sprinkler Installation Supplied from the Domestic Water System

a—Sprinkler heads installed in conformity with this section do not constitute a sprinkler system.

¹⁹⁷⁶ b—Special sprinkler installations may be supplied from the domestic water service within the building, or from a branch, provided the size of the domestic water supply piping up to the point at which sprinkler connections are made is at least equal to the size required by generally accepted standards for the number of sprinkler heads to be served, except as provided in paragraph e of this section.

¹⁹⁷⁶ c—Where the sprinkler connection to the domestic water supply piping is made within the building at a point other than the water service connection, the sprinkler connection shall be made to a main or branch from the main with no intervening means of shutoff from the main or main riser, except as provided in paragraph e of this section.

d—Special sprinkler installations containing more than ten heads shall be equipped with an automatic local alarm to function as set forth in section B 510-4.5c.

¹⁹⁷⁶ e—A special sprinkler installation within a dwelling unit or a sleeping room for transient occupancy shall be supplied and controlled by a valve that controls domestic water supply to one or more fixtures for the dwelling unit or transient occupancy. The sprinkler head shall be connected to the cold water supply for the dwelling unit or sleeping room through a pipe of at least 3/4 inch inside diameter. No local alarm is required.

B 510-4.8 (764.4h) Connections for First-Aid Hose

First-aid hose connections may be made from a 2½-inch or larger automatic wet sprinkler pipe, provided that the number of connections in a fire area is such that, when in use, the water supply and pressure required by the sprinklers are not reduced.

Equipment Requirements

B 510-5 **Standpipe Systems** **(764.5)**

B 510-5.1 **General Requirements** **(764.5a)**

a—Standpipe systems shall conform to the requirements of section B 501, and shall be designed and installed so that all parts of every floor area can be quickly reached by an effective stream of water.

b—Standpipe systems shall be designed for furnishing heavy hose streams for severe fires and first-aid streams to control incipient fires.

c—Required standpipe systems shall be available during construction.

B 510-5.2 **Piping** **(764.5b)**

a—Standpipes shall be of ample size to convey water from any designated source in sufficient quantity to supply the hose streams that are likely to be in simultaneous use.

b—At least one riser shall be located in an enclosed stairway.

c—Piping shall be connected so that water from any designated source of supply can flow to any one or combination of risers to deliver its full rated capacity without excessive friction loss.

B 510-5.3 **Hose Stations** **(764.5c)**

a—Hose stations shall be located in, or in close proximity to, enclosed stairways; they shall be conspicuously identified, and shall be arranged for easy accessibility.

b—Outlets for hose connections shall be provided for first-aid and heavy stream fire protection, and shall be arranged so as to permit quick and easy use. Where required by authority having jurisdiction, and in hotels and buildings of group B2 occupancy, first-aid hose and connection for heavy hose stream shall be provided.

c—Hose shall be installed in locations that are dry, ventilated, and free of excessive heat, so as to prevent deterioration; and they shall be connected for immediate use.

d—Heavy hose connection shall be located on a stairway. First-aid fire hose connection or hose shall be located in a public corridor. A durable sign, conspicuously located, shall be provided directing attention to the location of such hose stations.

Equipment Requirements

e—Cabinets used to enclose first-aid fire hose shall be conspicuously identified, of noncombustible construction, equipped with keyless doors, and arranged so as to provide for the quick and easy removal of equipment.

B 510-5.4 Water Supply (764.5d)

a—Standpipe systems shall have a reliable and adequate source of water to supply the hose streams that are likely to be needed simultaneously for protecting the building.

b—Where a single source of supply is used it shall be capable of automatically supplying water to maintain at least one heavy hose stream for buildings containing no more than two risers, and two heavy hose streams for buildings containing more than two risers.

c—Where more than one source of supply is used, at least one of the sources shall be capable of automatically supplying water to maintain one heavy hose stream until other sources can be brought into action.

d—Water supply for fire department use shall have sufficient pressure at the nozzle of the highest outlet to permit the discharge of an effective stream.

e—Water supply designed for use only as first-aid fire protection shall have sufficient pressure at the nozzle of the highest outlet to permit discharge of an effective first-aid stream when another such stream in the system is being discharged simultaneously.

B 510-5.5 Fire Department Connection (764.5e)

a—At least one fire department connection shall be provided.

b—Fire department connections shall be conspicuously identified for standpipe use, and shall be in conformity with the requirements set forth in sections B 510-4.4b and B 510-4.4c.

B 510-5.6 Controls (764.5f)

Control of water flow shall be obtained by means of devices located at each hose station.

B 510-6 Watchman's Systems (764.6)

a—Watchman's systems shall conform to the requirements of section B 501 and shall be designed and installed.

Equipment Requirements

ed so that routes are established to cause the watchman, in his patrol, to pass sufficiently close to each space of the building to detect evidence of fire or other emergency.

b—Stations shall be located so that a watchman can visit every space to be patrolled within a period of 40 minutes.

c—Equipment for watchman's systems shall be tamper-proof and designed to record legibly and completely the movements of the watchman so that a check can be made of the patrol of his route.

B 510-7 (764.7)

Automatic Operation of Doors and Vents

Doors and vents requiring smoke detectors for automatic operation shall have magnetic holds released by smoke or other products of combustion, by interruption of electrical power, and by activation of other automatic fire protection equipment. Smoke detectors for door and vent release shall be required to sound an alarm in buildings that are provided with sounding devices.

1976

B 510-8 (764.8)

Single-Station Smoke-Detecting Alarm Devices

a—Single-station smoke-detecting alarm devices shall conform to the requirements of section B 501.

b—Such device shall be designed and installed so as to avoid dead air space, detect smoke and activate the alarm, be reasonably free from false alarm and provide visible indication that the alarm is energized.

c—The alarm shall be clearly audible in sleeping spaces with intervening doors closed.

d—The device shall be directly connected to the lighting circuit of the dwelling unit or sleeping room with no intervening wall switch. Cord-connected installations shall not be permitted.

1976

B 510-9 (764.9)

Heat-Detecting Alarm Systems

a—Heat-detecting alarm systems shall conform to requirements of section B 501.

b—Such system shall be designed and installed so as to detect abnormally high temperature, activate an audible alarm in the corridor on the same floor as the detector which initiated the alarm, and simultaneously activate the light indicator on the hall side above the door of the dwelling unit.

Equipment Requirements

c—The heat detector shall be located on or near the ceiling in kitchens and kitchenettes in dwelling units.

d—The alarm shall be a common alarm for all heat detectors on the same floor level, and shall be clearly audible in all dwelling units on the alarm-initiated floor. Such alarm may be one of the audible alarms associated with other fire protection equipment. For exception see paragraph f of this section.

e—Such system shall be directly connected to the lighting circuit of the dwelling unit with no intervening wall switch.

f—Where exits from dwelling units do not open upon corridors but instead open directly to the exterior, the audible alarm shall be an alarm common to all heat detectors in such dwelling units, and shall be centrally located on the exterior of the building so as to be audible in all dwelling units. For such dwelling units, the light indicator shall be located on the exterior above the door of the dwelling unit.

**B 511
(765)**

ELEVATORS, DUMBWAITERS, AND ESCALATORS

**B 511-1
(765.1)**

General Requirements

a—Elevators, dumbwaiters, and escalators shall conform with the requirements of section B 501, and shall be designed and installed so as to be free from physical and fire hazards.

b—Elevators, dumbwaiters, and escalators shall be designed and installed to sustain safely the loads to which they are subject.

c—Elevator and dumbwaiter cars shall be provided with durable signs in conspicuous locations on which the rated capacity shall be indicated.

d—Elevators, dumbwaiters, and escalators shall be maintained in proper working order, and elevators and escalators shall be inspected and tested periodically.

e—Passenger elevators shall be provided in multiple dwellings as set forth in table B 511.

f—Where passenger elevators are required, at least one elevator landing shall be provided at each story.

Equipment Requirements

TABLE B 511. (I-765)—BUILDINGS THAT REQUIRE PASSENGER ELEVATORS

Occupancy	Where number of stories exceed:
B1	4
B2	2
B3	3

B 511-2 (765.2) Elevators and Dumbwaiters

B 511-2.1 (765.2a) Hoistway

a—Elevators and dumbwaiters shall be installed in enclosed hoistways constructed of noncombustible materials having fire-resistance ratings as set forth in table B 202-2, except for hoistway enclosures of elevators and dumbwaiters which are entirely within one story or which pierce no solid floors and serve two or more open galleries, or sidewalk elevators having a travel of not more than one story below the grade level.

b—Hoistway and machinery space enclosures extending into the top story shall be carried to a point at least 3 feet above the roof or to the underside of a roof of fire-resistive construction.

c—Not more than four elevators shall be installed in a multiple hoistway.

d—A pit with a ready means of access shall be provided at the bottom of every power elevator hoistway. A manually operated stop switch which will prevent the operation of the elevator machinery by the operating device shall be provided in the pit.

e—Hoistways of elevators and dumbwaiters shall be provided with natural means for venting smoke and hot gases to the outer air in the event of fire. Such ventilating openings shall conform to the requirements set forth in sections B 402-4.4h and B 402-4.4i.

f—Pipes, conduits, and cables, except traveling cables, shall be securely fastened to the hoistway construction. Sewage drainage piping and piping or ducts conveying gases, vapors, or liquids and not used in connection with the operation of the elevator or dumbwaiter, shall not be installed in the

Equipment Requirements

hoistway, except that pipes for heating or fire protection of the hoistway shall be permitted.

g—Clearances shall be maintained in the hoistway to prevent the car or counterweight from striking any part of the structure or equipment other than buffers.

h—Elevator hoistways shall have not more than two landing openings on a floor for each car.

i—Elevator and dumbwaiter hoistway landing openings shall be provided with opening protectives having fire-resistance ratings as set forth in section B 402-4.8.

j—In portions of single hoistways for elevators, where landing openings are more than 36 feet apart, there shall be provided at least one door assembly and door for emergency exit at every third floor, but in no event shall such doors be more than 36 feet apart.

k—Safe and convenient access shall be provided at the top of the elevator hoistway for inspection and servicing of elevator machinery, sheaves, and governors.

l—Window openings shall be permitted only in exterior building walls of hoistways. Such openings shall be provided with opening protectives in conformity with section B 401-4.

m—Hoistway window openings ten stories or less above a thoroughfare, or three stories or less above a roof of the same or an adjacent building, shall be guarded on the outside by fixed construction of strength sufficient to prevent access. Such windows shall be provided with a corrosion-resistant metal sign located outside at sill level, worded **HOISTWAY** in letters not less than 12 inches high.

n—Hoistways of sidewalk elevators shall not be located either wholly or partially in front of any entrance or exit of a building.

o—Where the top terminal landing opening of a sidewalk elevator is in the sidewalk or other area outside the building, electrical wiring shall be in rigid metal conduit, and other electrical equipment shall be of weatherproof type.

B 511-2.2 Machine Rooms **(765.2b)**

a—Power dumbwaiter machinery installed outside the hoistway, and all elevator machinery, shall be enclosed in a room or roof structure. Machine rooms directly connected with the hoistway shall be of construction having fire-resistance ratings as set forth in section B 402-4.4.

Equipment Requirements

b—Machine rooms shall be provided with natural or mechanical ventilation to avoid overheating of electrical equipment and to insure safe and normal operation of the hoisting equipment.

c—Machine rooms shall be maintained free of refuse and shall not be used for the storage of articles or materials unnecessary for the maintenance of the elevator or dumbwaiter. Flammable liquids shall not be kept in such rooms.

d—Moving parts of elevator machinery used in raising or lowering the elevator car shall be guarded to protect against accidental contact.

B 511-2.3 Machines and Machinery (765.2c)

a—Electric elevators shall be of the counterweighted traction type, except that non-counterweighted drum-type and screw machines may be used when designed in conformity with generally accepted standards.

b—Motors shall be direct-connected or gear-connected to the hoisting machine, and shall be used for no other purpose. No belt- or chain-driven machine shall be used to drive a power elevator.

c—Machines and machinery shall be supported and held in place so as to prevent effectively any part from becoming loose or displaced under the conditions imposed in service.

B 511-2.4 Car Construction (765.2d)

a—Passenger elevator cars shall be fully enclosed at sides, top, and bottom, except that openings shall be provided for entrance, escape, and ventilation.

b—Freight elevator cars shall be enclosed as required for passenger elevator cars, except that sides above 6 feet from platform floor and top may have metal screened enclosures with openings not exceeding 1½ inches in any dimension. Sidewalk elevators located outside the building are not required to be enclosed at the top.

c—Elevator cars shall be provided with ventilation by natural or mechanical means.

d—The interior of passenger elevator cars may be lined with class A or B interior finish material, as classified in section B 403-2, firmly bonded flat to the sides without intervening air spaces. Such material shall not be padded or tufted.

Equipment Requirements

e—Glass used in elevator cars shall be of the non-shatterable type.

f—Dumbwaiter cars shall be of such strength and stiffness that they will not deform appreciably if the load leans or falls against the side of the car.

g—Freight elevator cars and operator-controlled passenger elevator cars shall be provided with a door or gate at each entrance. Automatic passenger elevator cars shall be provided with a door at each entrance.

h—No elevator car shall have more than one compartment.

i—No elevator car shall be arranged to counter-balance another elevator car.

j—Passenger elevator cars shall have not more than two entrances.

k—An emergency exit shall be provided in the top of elevator cars.

1976

B 511-2.5 (765.2e)

Elevator Emergency Controls

Buildings 7 stories or more in height shall have manually- and automatically-operated emergency controls for passenger elevators which shall override normal operating controls and shall be suitable for use by fire department or other authorized personnel. Such manual controls shall be capable of operating the car and car doors and prevent their operation by other means. Such automatic controls shall be activated by smoke detectors which shall cause all cars to return nonstop to the main or intermediate lobby floor levels. Such detectors shall be located at each interior elevator landing other than at main and intermediate lobby floor levels, and shall be designed and installed so as to actuate an alarm automatically.

B 511-3 (765.3)

Escalators

B 511-3.1 (765.3a)

Design and Construction

a—Escalators shall be constructed of noncombustible materials throughout, except for handrails and step wheels.

b—The angle of inclination, the width and the speed of escalators, shall be designed so as to provide for the safety of the passengers.

Equipment Requirements

c—Clear and unobstructed access and egress shall be provided for each escalator.

d—Step treads and landings shall be of a material and design affording a secure foothold.

e—Minimum clearance between all exposed moving parts shall be maintained and guards shall be provided so as to prevent injury to passengers.

f—Escalators shall be provided with solid balustrading on each side. Such balustrading shall have no sharp projections or edges nor any abrupt change in width.

g—Each balustrading shall be equipped with a handrail moving at substantially the same speed and in the same direction as the travel of the steps.

h—Escalators, including floor openings, shall be protected by enclosures in conformity with the requirements set forth in section B 402-4.4.

i—The sides and undersides of escalator trusses and machinery spaces shall be fully enclosed with noncombustible material having fire-resistance ratings as required for escalator enclosures.

B 511-4 (765.4)

Controls

a—Elevators, dumbwaiters, and escalators shall be provided with operating, safety, and emergency controls to insure proper operation of the equipment and the safety of operators and passengers.

b—Power elevators shall not be controlled by direct hand-operated rope, rod, wheel or lever mechanism.

c—Hydraulic elevators shall be provided with full electric control.

d—Sidewalk elevators shall be operated by continuous-pressure or automatic operating devices. When the car is in contact with the sidewalk level doors, it shall be operable only by a manual continuous-pressure type control located at the sidewalk level nearby.

e—Sidewalk elevators shall be provided with an audible warning device at the sidewalk level arranged to sound when the elevator is ascending.

Equipment Requirements

1980

B 511-5 (765.5)

Self Service Passenger Elevator

B 511-5.1 (765.5a)

Doors

a—Minimum clear width for hoistway doors and car doors shall be thirty-two inches.

b—Power operated horizontally sliding car and hoistway doors opened and closed by automatic means shall be provided.

c—Doors closed by automatic means shall be provided with a door reopening device which will function to stop and reopen a car door and adjacent hoistway door in case the car door is obstructed while closing. This reopening device shall also be capable of sensing an object or person in the path of a closing door without requiring contact for activation at a nominal five and twenty-nine inches above the floor. Door reopening devices shall remain effective for a period of not less than twenty seconds.

d—The minimum acceptable time for doors to remain fully open shall not be less than 3 seconds. The minimum acceptable time from notification that a car is answering a call (lantern and audible signal) until the doors of that car start to close shall be as indicated in the following table.

Distance in feet	Time
0-5	4 seconds
10	7 seconds
15	10 seconds
20	13 seconds

The distance shall be established from a point in the center of the corridor or lobby, but at a maximum of 5 feet, directly opposite the farthest hall button to the centerline of the elevator entrance.

e—An unobstructed area at least 4 feet by 5 feet shall be provided in front of the elevator door on the entrance story.

B 511-5.2 (765.5b)

Door Jamb Markings

The floor designation shall be provided at each elevator entrance on both sides of the hoistway door jamb visible from within the car and the elevator lobby at a height of sixty inches above the floor. Designations shall be on a contrasting color background, be a minimum of two and one-half inches high and be raised thirty-thousandths of an inch. Applied plates shall be acceptable.

Equipment Requirements

B 511-5.3 Operation and Leveling (765.5c)

The elevator shall be automatic and be provided with a self-leveling feature that will automatically bring the car to the floor landings within a tolerance of one-half inch under normal loading and unloading conditions. This self-leveling shall within its zone, be entirely automatic and independent of the operating device and shall correct for overtravel and undertravel. The car shall also be maintained approximately level with the landing irrespective of load.

B 511-5.4 Car Controls (765.5d)

a—Floor registration buttons exclusive of border, shall be a minimum of three-fourths inch in size, raised, flush or recessed. Depth of flush or recessed buttons when operated shall not exceed three-eighths inch.

b—Markings shall be adjacent to the controls on a contrasting color background to the left of the controls. Letters or numbers shall be a minimum of one-half inch high and raised or recessed thirty-thousandths of an inch. Applied plates permanently attached shall be acceptable.

c—Emergency controls shall be grouped together at the bottom of the control panel.

d—The centerline of the alarm button and the emergency stop switch shall be at a nominal thirty-five inches and the highest floor buttons no higher than fifty-four inches from the floor.

e—Uniform symbols as indicated shall be used to assist in readily identifying essential controls. Such car control symbol designations shall be:

				
DOOR OPEN	DOOR CLOSE	ALARM BELL	EMERGENCY STOP	DESIGNATES MAIN ENTRANCE & EGRESS FROM BUILDING

B 511-5.5 Hall Buttons (765.5e)

The centerline of the hall call buttons shall be a nominal forty-two inches above the floor. Direction buttons, exclusive of border shall be a minimum of three-quarters inch in size, raised, flush or recessed. Visual indication shall be provided to show each call registered and extinguished when the call is

Equipment Requirements

answered. Depth of flush or recessed buttons when operated shall not exceed three-eighths inch.

B 511-5.6 **(765.5f)** **Hall Lantern**

a—Visual and audible signal shall be provided at each elevator entrance indicating to the prospective passenger, the car answering the call and its direction of travel.

b—The visual signal for each direction shall be a minimum of two and one-half inches in size and visible from the proximity of the hall call button.

c—The audible signal shall sound once for the up direction and twice for the down direction.

d—The centerline of the fixture shall be located a minimum of six feet from the floor. The use of in-car lanterns conforming to above and located in car door jamb shall be acceptable.

1976

B 512 **(766.1)**

INSTRUCTIONAL SIGNS FOR USE OF EXITS

In buildings provided with elevators, instructional signs for use of exits shall be provided and conspicuously located at elevator landings and both inside and outside of stairways at every floor. Such signs shall be diagrammatic and identify exits to be used and advise occupants concerning floor evacuation procedures during a fire emergency.

Appendix

Guide for Metrication

To prepare for the conversion to the metric system, the State Building Construction Code herewith lists typical conversion factors for units currently in use in the Code.

The conversion factors are approximate and derived from ANSI Z 210.1-1976, "Metric Practice Guide."

U.S. Unit	Factor	Metric Equivalent	Metric Abbreviation
Fahrenheit	Subtract 32 and divide result by 1.8	Celsius	°C
inch	multiply by 25.4	millimeter	mm
foot	divide by 3.3	meter	m
square inch	multiply by 645	square millimeter	mm ²
square foot	divide by 10.8	square meter	m ²
pound	divide by 2.2	kilogram	kg
ton	multiply by 907	kilogram	kg
gallon	multiply by 3.8	liter	l
pound per foot	multiply by 14.6	newton/meter	N/m
inch per ton	multiply by 28	millimeter/ton	mm/ton
pound per square inch (psi)	divide by 14	kilogram per square centimeter	kg/cm ²
pound per square inch (psi)	multiply by 6900	pascal	Pa
pound per square foot (psf)	multiply by 4.9	kilogram per square meter	kg/m ²
pound per square foot (psf)	multiply by 48	pascal	Pa
feet per minute	divide by 200	meter per second	m/s
cubic feet per minute	multiply by $\frac{470}{1,000,000}$	cubic meter per second	m ³ /s
gallon per minute	divide by 16	liter per second	l/s
Btu per hour	divide by 3.4	watt	w

Index

- Abbreviations, B 108-1, B 108-2
- Acceptability, B 107
- Accessibility
 - for fire-fighting purposes, B 109b,
 - B 110b, tables B 203-1.1a,b, footnotes
 - 3, B 203-1b,h, B 204-1e, B 204-3c,
 - B 211-7d, B 510-4.4c, B 510-5
 - (see also *Exit and Window*)
- Accessory structure
 - definition, B 108-3
 - garage as, tables B 203-1.1a,b, and
 - B 402-4.7
- Accessory use
 - definition, B 108-3, B 201b
- Addition
 - definition, B 108-3
 - to existing buildings, B 105-2, B 203-2,
 - B 501d
 - regulated by, B 105-2.3, B 406-4.2
- Air conditioning
 - (see *Ventilation, mechanical and Refrigeration equipment*)
- Air intake
 - for courts, B 204-3c
 - openings for, B 401-1b, B 508-3.2
- Air, recirculated, B 504-2.13b, B 508-3.4
- Air supply
 - (see *Ventilation, mechanical and Ventilation, natural*)
 - for enclosures containing heat-producing equipment, B 504-2.7
 - for enclosures containing ventilating and fuel-burning equipment,
 - B 508-3.2c
 - for garages, B 504-2.13b
 - intake and exhaust openings for,
 - B 508-3.2, B 508-4a
 - for persons in public spaces, B 508-3.3b
- Alcove, B 206-1d
- Alley, definition, B 108-3
- Allowable stress (see *Stress*)
- Alteration
 - definition, B 108-3
- regulated by, B 105-2.1c, B 105-2.3,
- B 203-2c, B 406-4.2, B 501d
- Analysis and test procedure, B 305
- Anchors (see *Fastenings*)
 - B 304-6 and 7
- Apartments
 - classification by occupancy group,
 - B 202-1
 - definition, B 108-3
 - fire area and height, table B 203-1a
- Apartment, garden
 - definition, B 108-3
- Apartment hotel
 - definition, B 108-3
- Apartment house
 - definition, B 108-3
- Area (see *Fire area, Floor area*)
 - of habitable room and space, B 206-1
 - increase in existing building, B 203-2b,c
 - of kitchen (see definition of *kitchen*,
 - B 108-3)
 - of kitchenette (see definition of
 - kitchenette*, B 108-3)
 - of openings in exterior wall, B 401-4.1
 - of openings in fire wall, B 402-4.8c
 - of plastic windows in exterior walls,
 - B 401-4.1a
 - of skylight, B 401-6.3b,c
 - of smoke vent, B 402-4.4h
- Artificial light (see *Light*)
- Ash removal equipment, B 504-2.4a
- Assembly space (see *Public Space*)
 - definition, B 108-3
 - emergency lighting, B 507-2.2a,
 - table B 507
 - exits from, B 211-1i, B 211-4.1c,
 - B 211-4.1g,h
 - ventilation, B 508-3.3e
 - safety controls for ventilation of,
 - B 508-3.5b,c
- Attic
 - definition, B 108-3
 - live loads on floor in, table B 304-2.2
 - when not deemed a story, B 203-1j(4)

Index

- Auditorium
 - floor area per occupant in, table B 211-7a
- Baffle, smoke and draft, B 402-4.5b, c
- Balcony
 - construction limitations, B 401-3.3c, B 401-3.4d
 - construction, when part of exit, B 211-2f
 - guardrail or parapet, B 205-1f (see *Parapet and Railing*)
 - height, B 207-1b
 - impact loads on railings and parapet walls, B 304-9b
- Basement
 - cellar recreation room, B 208-1b
 - definition, B 108-3
 - (see also definition of *story*, B 108-3)
 - exit, distance of travel to, table B 211-6
 - exits, number of, table B 211-7c
 - as habitable space, B 203-1j, B 206-2a
 - openings for natural ventilation, table B 209-5
 - prevention of water penetration into, B 301e, B 307-4
 - stair enclosure in, B 211-5f, B 402-4.4e
- Bathroom
 - definition, B 108-3
 - floor, B 208-2.2
 - plumbing fixtures, B 502-7d,e
 - temperature requirements, B 504-1b
 - ventilation, B 508-3.3e
 - (see also *Toilet room and Physically handicapped facilities*)
- Bathtub, B 502-6a,b,c,d, B 502-7
- Beam (see *Structural elements*)
 - fire-protection, table B 202-2, B 401-8.1d, B 402-1a, B 402-2.1d, B 402-3
 - fire-resistance requirements, B 402-3, table B 202-2
 - projection below ceiling, B 205-1g
 - reduction in live loads on, B 304-2.1c
- Bearing value of soil, B 302
- Boiler room (see *Heat producing equipment*)
 - air supply for, B 504-2.7
 - for cleaning and pressing, B 402-4.6e
 - containing ventilating equipment, B 508-3.2c
 - exits from, B 211-1o
 - ventilation of, B 508-3.3e
- Bolts, fire exit, B 211-4.1h
- Borings
 - building area requiring, B 302-2b
 - soil, B 302-2b,c
- Bridge
 - construction, when part of exit, B 211-2f
 - guardrail or parapet, B 205-1f (see *Parapet and Railing*)
 - for sidewalk protection, B 304-12
- Building
 - accessory (see *Accessory structure*)
 - alteration, B 105-2, B 203-2, B 406-4.2, B 501d
 - classification by occupancy groups, B 202-1
 - classification by type of construction, B 202-2 and table B 202-2
 - converted, B 105-2.1c,d, B 105-2.3, B 203-2, B 406-4.2, B 501d
 - definition, B 108-3
 - (see also definition of *construction classification*, B 108-3)
 - existing, B 105-2, B 203-2, B 406-4.2, B 501d
 - fire area, B 203
 - height, B 108-3, B 203, B 206-2
 - (see also definition of *story*, B 108-3)
 - line, definition of, B 108-3
- Bumper block, for parking area, B 304-9c,d
- Carport, B 402-4.7f
- Ceiling
 - height of exit passage, B 211-2a
 - height, habitable space, B 205-1g, B 206-1a, B 206-2a
 - height, nonhabitable space, B 208-1a

Index

- height, occupied space,
 - B 205-1g, B 207-1
- height, public space, B 203-2c,
 - B 207-2
- maximum area of concealed space
 - above, B 402-3d, B 402-5.3f
- opening in fire-rated, B 402-3f
- protective, B 402-3
- Cellar (see *Basement*)
 - definition, B 108-3
 - exit, distance of travel to,
 - table B 211-6
 - exits, number of, B 211-7,
 - B 211-8(6)
 - mechanical ventilation,
 - 508-3.3e
 - natural ventilation, table B 209-5
 - prevention of water penetration
 - into, B 301e, B 307-4
 - stair enclosure in, B 211-5f,
 - B 402-4.4e
 - (see also *Nonhabitable space* and *definition of story*, B 108-3)
- Chimney
 - draft, B 505-2
 - extension of, B 505-6
 - firesafety of, B 505-3
 - firestopping around, B 402-5.2b
 - flue lining, B 505-1d
 - foundations for, B 505-1c
 - fuel burning equipment connected
 - to, B 504-2.8
 - gas piping in, B 503-1e
 - general requirements, B 505-1
 - for incinerator, B 505-1i,
 - B 506-1f
 - location of outlets, B 505-5,
 - table B 505-5
 - metal smokestack as, B 505-1e
 - openings in, B 505-1f, B 505-1g
 - removal of products of combustion
 - by, B 504-2.8, B 505-1b
 - spark arrester, B 505-4
 - for temporary heating equipment,
 - B 109c
 - wind load on, table B 304-4a
- Clearance
 - between ducts and combustible
 - construction, B 508-3.1h
 - for fuel and storage tanks, B 509-2c
 - from outlets of chimneys, flues and
 - gasvents, table B 505-5
 - between smokestacks and building,
 - B 505-1e
- Column (see *Structural elements*)
 - fire protection, table B 202-2,
 - B 402-1a, B 402-3a,e
 - reduction of live load on,
 - B 304-2.1d
- Combined load (see *Load*)
- Combustible, definition, B 108-3
- Community residence
 - change of occupancy in existing
 - buildings, B 105-2.1d
 - classification by occupancy group,
 - B 202-1
 - definition, B 108-3
 - fire- and smoke-detecting system
 - requirement, B 406-3
- Concentrated live load (see *Load*)
- Construction
 - classification by types (see *definition of construction classification*, B 108-3)
 - limitations by fire limits, B 401-2.3,
 - B 401-2.4, B 401-3.3, B 401-3.4
 - safety during, B 109
- Controlled materials (see *Materials*)
- Cooking space
 - (see *Kitchen, domestic and Kitchenette*)
 - other than kitchen, separation of,
 - B 402-4.5c
- Cooling tower (see *Tower*)
- Cornice
 - firestopping, B 402-5.3e
 - maximum projection, B 401-5
 - wind load on, table B 304-4a
- Corridor (see *Fire passage*)
 - capacity of, B 211-2b
 - converging, B 211-2b
 - dead end, B 211-1j
 - definition, B 108-3
 - directional signs in, B 507-2.3b
 - doors, B 211-4.1e
 - from elevators, B 211-2c
 - enclosure, table B 202-2, B 211-2,
 - B 402-4.4g
 - floor registers in, B 504-2.12b

Index

- gas meters in, B 503-3a
 - gas piping in, B 503-1e
 - height, B 211-2a
 - interior finish, table B 403-3
 - live loads, table B 304-2.2
 - number of stairways discharging into, B 211-3.1m
 - smoke stops in, B 211-2a
 - used as plenum chamber, B 508-3.1c
 - ventilation, B 508-3.3e, f
 - width, B 211-1e, B 211-1i
- Court
- air intake for inner, B 204-3c
 - definition, B 108-3
 - (see also definition of *legal open space*, B 108-3)
 - dimensions, B 204-1c, B 204-3
 - general requirements, B 204-1
 - storm drainage of, B 502-5a
 - window opening on, B 204-1a, B 206-2b, B 209-3a, B 209-4
- Crawl space, ventilation of, B 301d
- Curb level
- basement space in relation to,
 - (see definition of *basement*, B 108-3)
 - courts and yards in relation to, B 204-1c
 - definition, B 108-3
 - (see also definition of *grade, finished*, B 108-3)
 - habitable space below, B 206-2
 - height of building relative to,
 - (see definition of *height, building*, B 108-3)
- Curtain wall
- definition (see definition *wall, curtain*, B 108-3)
 - fire resistance rating, table B 202-2, B 401-3.3b, B 401-3.4b
 - (see also *Wall*)
- Dead end (see *Exit*), B 211-1j
- Decorative material
- B 403-1, B 403-6
- Definitions, B 108-3
- Deflection
- under elevator machine load, B 304-11
 - under imposed load, B 306-2
 - under 1½ times imposed load, B 306-3b
 - (see also definition of *residual deflection*, B 108-3)
- Demolition, safety during, B 110, B 304-12
- Design analysis, B 305a
 - (see also *Load*)
- Dining room
- public, enclosure for, B 402-4.5d
- Display window, B 402-4.1c
- Distance separation
- definition, B 108-3
 - measurement, B 401-3.1
 - minimum required, table B 401-3.2
 - when required, B 401-3.2
- Domestic hot water system
- general requirements, B 501, B 502-1
 - plumbing facilities, B 502-6a
 - safety devices for, B 502-3d
- Door, B 211-4 (see *Exit and Opening protective*)
- from assembly space, B 211-4.1c
 - automatic operation of, B 510-7
 - bolts, fire exit, B 211-4.1h
 - capacity of exit, B 211-4.1d,
 - table B 211-7b
 - clearance to, B 211-3.1f
 - dimensions of exit, B 211-4.1d
 - distance of travel to exit,
 - table B 211-6
 - for elevator car, B 511-2.4g
 - elevator machine room, B 402-4.4k
 - emergency use, B 211-7d
 - exit, B 211-4.1
 - for first aid fire hose cabinets, B 510-5.3e
 - glazing in, B 208-3
 - glazing in bathtub enclosures, B 208-3
 - glazing in shower stalls, B 208-3
 - for hoistway emergency exit,
 - B 511-2.1j
 - horizontal exit, B 211-2f
 - incinerator charging, B 506-3
 - for landing at grade exit, B 211-4.1f
 - locks on, B 211-1k, B 211-4.1b
 - minimum height, B 211-4.1e
 - permissible locations for wood, B 402-1f
 - for physically handicapped, B 214-4

Index

- projection of, into exit, B 211-1i
 - revolving, B 211-4.2
 - saddle, B 211-3.1f
 - smoke stop, B 211-2a
 - width of exit, B 211-4.1c, B 211-4.1d, table B 211-4.1
 - wired-glass panels in, B 401-4.2
 - where wood is permitted, B 402-1f
- Draft hood, B 505-2b
- Duct, ventilating
- general requirements, B 508-3.1
 - firestopping of openings around, B 402-5.1
 - fuel gas piping prohibited in, B 503-1e
 - for obtaining required ventilation, B 508-3.3e
 - for warm air heating, B 504-2.3
- Dumbwaiter, B 511
(see also *Elevator*)
- Dwelling unit
- definition, B 108-3
 - number of, in type 5 construction, B 401-3.4c
 - for physically handicapped, B 214-1, table B 214-1b
 - requirements, B 206-3, B 211-3.1o, table B 211-4.1, table B 211-6, B 211-8(3)
 - size, B 206-1a,b
- Eaves
- combined loads on, B 304-10d
 - firestopping in, B 402-5.3e
 - materials, B 401-5a, b, c
 - projection from building, B 401-5
 - wind load on, table B 304-4a
- Electrical wiring and equipment
- general requirements, B 507-1
 - grounding, B 507-1e
 - metal siding and roofing, B 507-1i
 - in hazardous locations, B 507-1c
 - for sidewalk elevators, B 511-2.1o
 - temporary, during construction, B 507-1h
 - terminal connections, B 507-1a
- Elevator
- car construction, B 511-2.4
 - car, emergency exit in, B 511-2.4k
 - deflection of supports of machinery, B 304-11
 - doors and gates in, B 511-2.4g
 - emergency controls, B 511-2.5
 - emergency exits from hoistway for, B 511-2.1j
 - enclosed hoistways required for, B 210-2a, B 402-4.4b, B 511-2.1a
 - general requirements, B 211-3.5, B 511-1
 - guards for moving parts, B 511-2.2d
 - hoistway, B 511-2.1
 - landings for, B 210-2b, B 211-2c, B 511-1f
 - lighting of, B 507-2.1a
 - machinery for, B 511-2.3
 - machine loads on supports, B 304-2.1a, B 304-11
 - machine rooms, B 511-2.2
 - machine room enclosure, B 402-4.4j
 - maintenance and inspection, B 511-1d
 - number of, in hoistway, B 210-2a, B 511-2.1c
 - passageways to, B 211-2c
 - passenger (see *Self service passenger elevator*)
 - for physically handicapped, B 214-2.4
 - pit, B 511-2.1d
 - requirements based on building height and occupancy, B 511-1e
 - ventilation of cars, B 511-2.4c
 - ventilation of hoistways, B 402-4.4h,i, B 511-2.1e
 - ventilation of machine rooms, B 508-3.3e, B 511-2.2b
 - window openings in hoistways, B 511-2.1l, B 511-3.1m
 - working stresses for machinery supports, B 304-11
- Emergency escape
- from dwellings, B 211-7d, B 211-8
 - from elevator car, B 511-2.4k
 - from elevator hoistway, B 511-2.1j
 - from rooms containing equipment, B 211-1o
- Emergency lighting, B 507-2.2
- Emergency ventilation, B 508-4
- Energy conservation
- general provisions, B 111
- Enforcement officer, definition, B 108-3

Index

Escalator

- controls, B 511-4
- design and construction, B 511-3.1
- enclosures for, B 402-4.4b, c, d,
B 511-3.1i
- general requirements, B 211-3.4,
B 511-1
- lighting of, B 507-2.1a
- maintenance and inspection,
B 511-1d

Existing buildings

- installation of equipment in, B 501d
- sprinkler system in converted, B 406-4.2
- under this Code, B 105-2, B 203-2

Exit, B 211

- balcony as part of, B 211-2f
- bathroom not permitted as, B 211-1f
- from boiler or engine room, B 211-1o
- bridge as part of, B 211-2f
- cellar and basement stairs as,
B 211-5f
- converging passageway or ramp,
B 211-2b
- dead end, B 211-1j
- definition, B 108-3
- determination of required number,
width, type of, B 211-1i, B 211-6a, b,
B 211-7, table B 211-7a,
B 211-8
- diminishing of, B 211-1e
- discharge capacity,
table B 211-7b
- distance of travel, B 211-6
from two-story dwelling units,
table B 211-6, footnote 1
- draperies and decorative materials in,
B 211-1j, B 403-6
- elevators connecting with, B 211-2c,
B 211-3.5
- emergency, B 211-7d
- enclosure, B 211-5, B 402-4.4a
- exterior stairways, B 211-3.3, B 211-7b
- fire terrace as, B 211-2h
- flooring in, B 403-4c, B 403-5f
- from garage, B 212-1d, e, B 402-4.7
- gas piping prohibited in, B 503-1e
- general requirements, B 211-1
- horizontal, B 211-2f, B 211-7c
- instructional signs for use of,
B 512
- interior finish and trim in, table B 403-3,
B 403-4a
- interior stairway, B 211-3.2
- lighting, B 211-1e, B 507-2.1b
- location of, B 211-6
- from mechanized parking structures,
B 211-3.1e
- number of, B 211-6, B 211-7,
B 211-8
- as plenum chamber, B 508-3.1c
- passageways, B 211-2
- for physically handicapped, B 214
- prohibition of, B 211-1c, f
- protection of opening to, B 402-4.8
- ramp as, B 211-2d, e
- refrigerating equipment not permitted
in, B 508-1.2, B 508-1.5a
- registers not permitted in floors of,
B 504-2.12b
- to or from roof, B 211-1m, B 211-3.1a,
B 211-7a
- scuttles as, B 211-3.1b
- signs, B 211-1e, B 507-2.3
- slide escapes not permitted as, B 211-1h
- types, B 211-7
- ventilation, B 508-3.3e, f
- width of, B 211-1e, B 211-4.1d,
B 211-7
- where one exit is permitted, B 211-8

Expansion tank for hot water
heating system, B 504-2.11

Exterior stairway, B 211-3.3

Fallout shelters

- applicability to, B 105-7
- definition, B 108-3

Family, definition, B 108-3

Fans

- safety controls, B 508-3.5
- ventilating, B 508-3.3e, f

Fastenings, B 304-5a, B 306-7
(see also *Anchors*)

Finished grade

- (see *Curb level*)

Fire alarm systems

- in buildings for transient occupancy,
B 406-2
- definition, B 108-3

Index

- electrical requirements, B 510-2.4
 - general requirements, B 501,
 - B 510-2.1
 - for group B1 and B3 occupancy,
 - B 510-2.1d
 - in group B1 and B3 occupancy,
 - B 406-2
 - for group B2 occupancy, B 510-2.1e
 - presignal type, where permitted,
 - B 510-2.1f
 - signaling devices in, B 510-2.2
 - sounding devices, B 510-2.3
 - tests, B 510-2.5
 - visible signal, B 510-2.1d
- Fire area**
- definition, B 108-3
 - distance of travel to exit in, B 211-6
 - exits from, B 211-7a
 - fire wall separation, B 202-2.1
 - of garage and open parking structures,
 - tables B 203-1.1a, b,
 - B 203-1f, B 406-4.1
 - limitations, B 203-1d, f, B 401-3.4c,
 - B 402-2
 - of multiple dwelling, tables
 - B 203-1a, 1b, B 203-2b
- Fire dampers in ducts, B 402-4.8c,**
B 508-3.1i, B 508-3.1l
- Fire department connection**
- for sprinkler system, B 510-4.4
 - for standpipe system, B 510-5.5
- Fire escape**
- not permitted as an exit, B 211-1g
 - for roof access, B 211-3.1c
- Fire hazard classification**
- definition, B 108-3
- Fire limits**
- construction regulated by,
 - B 401-2.3, B 401-2.4, B 401-3.3,
 - B 401-3.4
 - definition, B 108-3
 - designation, B 401-2.1, B 401-2.2
- Fire passage, fire-resistance ratings of,**
table B 202-2, B 401-1b
- Fireplace, B 405, B 505-1h (see**
Chimney)
- Fire protection equipment**
- definition, B 108-3
 - general requirements, B 501, B 510-1
 - in kitchens serving public dining rooms, B 508-3.3c
 - in relation to area and height,
 - B 203-1a, table B 203-1a
 - where required, B 406
- Fire-resistance rating**
- (see definition of *construction classification*, B 108-3)
 - definition, B 108-3
 - of enclosures of elevator machine rooms, B 402-4.4j
 - of enclosures of exits, hoistways, shafts and stairways, B 202-2,
 - B 402-4.4
 - of enclosures of heat producing equipment, B 402-4.6
 - of enclosures of incinerators and refuse rooms, B 402-4.6f
 - of enclosures of cooking spaces, kitchens and public dining rooms,
 - B 402-4.5
 - of enclosures for service and storage rooms, B 402-4.3
 - of fire walls, B 402-2.2
 - of garage separations, B 402-4.7
 - of opening protectives, B 401-4.2,
 - B 402-4.8
 - of party walls, B 401-8.2
 - of separations between mixed occupancy, B 402-4.1
 - of spandrel walls, B 401-3.3b,
 - B 401-3.4b
 - of structural elements, table B 202-2,
 - B 402-1a, B 402-3
- Fire resistive**
- definition, B 108-3
- Fire-retardant wood**
- (see *Wood, fire retardant*)
- Fire shutters, B 402-4.8c**
- Fire and smoke detecting system,**
B 510-3
- alternate requirements,
 - B 406-1a, c, B 406-4.1a
 - in buildings for transient occupancy,
 - B 406-3
 - in community residences,
 - B 406-3
 - definition, B 108-3
 - devices, B 510-3.2

Index

- general requirements, B 501,
B 510-3.1
- manual fire alarm box required,
B 510-3.3
- miscellaneous requirements,
B 510-3.4
- Fire separations
 - display windows, B 402-4.1c
 - between dwelling units,
table B 202-2, B 206-3b
 - elevator machine rooms and hoistway,
B 402-4.4j
 - garage and other space, B 402-4.7
 - kitchen and public dining rooms,
B 402-4.5
 - mixed occupancies, B 402-4.1
table B 402-4
 - motel kitchens and sleeping area,
B 402-4.5b
 - public dining rooms, B 402-4.5d
- Firestopping
 - around chimney, fireplace and flue,
B 402-5.2b
 - cornices and eaves, B 402-5.3e
 - definition, B 108-3
 - of ducts, B 508-3.1d
 - general requirements, B 402-5.1
 - behind interior finish, B 402-5.3b,
B 403-5c
 - location of, B 402-4.2c, B 402-5.3
 - materials, B 402-5.2
 - above suspended ceilings,
B 402-3d, B 402-4.2c, B 402-5.3f
 - stairs, B 402-5.3d
- Fire terrace, B 205-1f, B 211-2h,
B 211-3.1d
- Fire wall
 - area per story, B 402-2
 - combustible members in, B 402-2.1d
 - construction of, B 402-2.1
 - definition (see definition of
Wall, fire, B 108-3)
 - ducts in, B 402-4.8c
 - extension above roof, B 402-2.1b
 - fire-resistance rating, B 402-2.2,
table B 202-2
 - junction with exterior wall, B 402-2.1c
 - opening protective in, B 402-4.8
 - separating different heights
of buildings, B 202-2.1f
 - separating different types
of construction, B 202-2.1e
(see also *Horizontal exit*)
- Flame-resistant material,
definition, B 108-3
- Flame-spread rating
 - classification of interior finishes,
B 403-2
 - definition, B 108-3
- Flammable
 - definition, B 108-3
- Flammable liquids (see *Fuel oil
equipment*)
- Flashing, B 307-3
- Floor
 - assembly test of, B 306
 - for bathroom, kitchen and toilet room,
B 205-1d, e, B 208-2.2, B 502-7d, e
 - of exit balcony or bridge, B 211-2f
 - fire-resistance rating, table B 202-2
 - garage, B 212-1c
 - loads on, B 304-1, B 304-2
- Floor area
 - as basis for natural light, B 209-2b, c
 - as basis for natural ventilation,
B 209-3b, c, table B 209-5
 - definition, B 108-3
 - for exit determination, table B 211-7a
 - of habitable room and space,
B 206-1
 - mezzanine, B 203-1j(1)
- Flue (see *Chimney and Incinerator*)
definition, B 108-3
- Footing, spread
(see *Foundation*)
- Force
 - overturning, B 304-5
 - sliding, B 304-6
 - uplift, B 304-7
- Foundation
 - bearing value of soil under, B 302-1
 - for chimney, B 505-1c
 - design load on, B 304-1
 - masonry for type 5 construction,
B 203-1e
 - piles for, B 302-2d

Index

- soil tests for determination of,
B 302-2, B 302-3
- spread footing, B 302-2c
- waterproofing requirements for,
B 301e, B 307-4
- Fuel-burning equipment
 - air supply for, B 504-2.7
 - combustion space of, B 504-2.1
 - fuel supply connection to, B 504-2.5
 - in garages, B 212-1h, B 402-4.6d,
B 504-2.13
 - for heating during construction,
B 109-c
 - prohibited location for, B 504-2.4
 - removal of products of combustion
from, B 504-2.8
 - safety devices for, B 504-2.9
 - smoke control of, B 504-2.2
 - in spaces with mechanical exhaust,
B 508-3.2c
 - (see also *Heat producing equipment*)
- Fuel gas system (see *Gas piping
equipment and systems*)
- Fuel oil equipment
 - general requirements, B 509-1
 - piping, B 509-4
 - storage tanks, B 509-2
 - storage tanks inside of buildings,
B 509-3
- Furnace (see *Heat producing equipment*)
- Garage
 - as accessory use, B 108-3
(see definition of *accessory use*,
B 108-3)
 - access to multiple dwelling from,
B 212-2b, B 402-4.7
 - bumper block for, B 304-9c, d
 - distance of travel to exits in,
table B 211-6
 - exits, table B 211-7c, B 212-1d
 - fire area, B 203-1f,
table B 203-1.1a
 - fire protection equipment, B 212-1j,
B 406-4.1, B 406-5
 - fire separation between multiple
dwelling and, B 212-2a, B 212-3a,
B 402-4.7
 - flammable liquids, B 212-2c,
B 402-4.7d
 - floors or decks in, B 212-1c
 - fuel oil storage tanks, B 509-3b
 - general requirements, B 212-1
 - heat producing equipment, B 212-1h,
B 402-4.6d, B 504-2.13
 - horizontal impact loading on parapet
and railing, B 304-9c
 - lighting, B 212-1k, B 507-2.1b
 - live load for, B 304-2.2
 - maximum fire area and height, tables
B 203-1.1a, b, B 203-1d, f
 - protection of equipment installed
within, B 501h
 - ramps, B 212-1e
 - sprinkler systems, tables B 203-1.1a, b,
B 406-4.1
 - standpipes, B 406-5
 - types of construction permitted, tables
B 203-1.1a, b
 - ventilation, B 212-1i, B 508-3.1b,
B 508-3.3e
- Garden apartments
 - definition, B 108-3
 - classification by occupancy
group, B 202-1
- Gas piping equipment and systems
 - general requirements, B 501, B 503-1
 - high pressure, B 503-5
 - liquefied petroleum, B 503-6
 - refrigerators, gas, B 503-4
 - service equipment, B 503-3
 - shutoff valves, B 503-2
 - (see also *Heat producing equipment*)
- Gasvent
 - definition, B 108-3 (see also *Chimney*)
- Generally accepted standards
 - acceptability, B 107
 - definition, B 108-3
- Girder (see *Beam*)
- Glazing
 - area, B 209-2b, c
 - in elevator cars, B 511-2.4e
 - in enclosed porches, B 401-3.4d
 - plastic material, B 404
 - safety, B 208-3
 - wired, B 401-4.2
 - (see also *Door*, *Skylight*, *Window*)
- Grade, finished
 - definition, B 108-3
 - (see also definition of *Curb level*,
B 108-3)

Index

- Ground water
 - protection from, B 307-4
- Guard rails (see *Railings*)
- Gutters, B 502-5c
- Habitable space
 - alcove in, B 206-1d
 - below curb level, B 206-2a
 - definition, B 108-3
 - general requirements, B 205-1b
 - height, B 205-1g, B 206-1a
 - lighting requirements, B 209-2,
B 507-2.1a
 - size, B 206-1
 - temperature requirements, B 504-1b
 - ventilation, B 209-1, B 209-3,
B 508-3.3e
- Hallway
 - definition, B 108-3
- Handicapped residence, B 202-1
 - Group B2
 - (see *Nursing home*)
- Handrails (see *Railings*)
- Heat-detecting alarm system
 - alternate requirements, B 406-1c
 - definition, B 108-3
 - general requirements, B 510-9
 - in group B3 occupancy, B 406-7
- Heat detector
 - general requirements, B 510-9
 - in lieu of smoke detector,
B 510-3.1b
- Heating (see *Heat producing equipment*)
 - general requirements, B 504-1
 - temperature required, B 504-1b, table
B 504-1
- Heat producing equipment
 - (see also *Incinerator*)
 - air supply, B 504-2.7
 - clearance from combustible materials,
B 504-2.6b
 - combustion space for, B 504-2.1
 - connection to fuel supply, B 504-2.5
 - where contact is a hazard, B 504-1d,
B 504-2.4c
 - enclosure of, B 402-4.6
 - expansion tanks for, B 504-2.11
 - fuel storage, (see *Fuel oil equipment*)
 - in garages, B 212-1h, B 402-4.6d,
B 504-2.13
 - general requirements, B 504-1
 - for heating during construction, B 109c
 - installation, B 504-2.6a
 - insulation for, B 504-2.10b
 - prohibited locations, B 211-1n,
B 402-4.6d, B 504-2.4
 - removal of products of combustion
from, B 504-2.8
 - safety devices, B 504-2.9
 - smoke control, B 504-2.2
 - warm air, B 504-2.3
 - (see also *Incinerator*)
- Historic building
 - definition, B 108-3
 - general requirements, B 203-2.1
- Hoistway
 - definition, B 108-3
 - emergency exit in, B 511-2.1j
 - enclosure, table B 202-2, B 203-1j(5),
B 210-2a, B 402-4.4, B 515-2.1
 - landing openings in, B 511-1f,
B 511-2.1i, j
 - number of elevators in, B 210-2a, c
 - piping and ducts not permitted in,
B 501k, B 503-1e, B 508-1.5a,
B 511-2.1f
 - pit, B 511-2.1d
 - of sidewalk elevators, B 511-2.1n
 - smoke vents, B 402-4.4h, i, B 511-2.1e
 - windows in, B 511-2.1l, m
 - (see also *Elevator*)
- Horizontal exit, B 211-2f, B 211-7b, c
 - definition, B 108-3
- Hose stations (see *Standpipe system*)
- Hotel
 - definition, B 108-3
 - definition of apartment hotel, B 108-3
 - exit widths, B 211-1i
 - fire protection equipment, B 406-2,
B 406-3
 - public space ceiling height, B 207-2
- Hydrant
 - access to during construction, B 109b
 - access to during demolition, B 110b
 - fire area accessibility for parking
structures, tables B 203-1.1a, b

Index

- Impact (see *Load*)
- Incinerator
 - charging door from refuse room, B 506-3
 - distance between exterior opening and outlets, table B 505-5
 - enclosure for, B 402-4.6f
 - general requirements, B 506-1
 - flue for, B 402-4.6g, B 505-1i
 - service openings, B 402-4.8d, B 506-2
- Insulation
 - on chimneys, flues, and gasvents, B 505-3
 - on ducts, B 508-3.1e
 - flammable, B 402-1g
 - foam plastic, B 404-2
 - on heat producing equipment, B 504-2.10b
 - to reduce heat flow, B 504-2.10a
- Interior finish and trim
 - attachment of, B 403-5
 - classification, B 403-2
 - definition, B 108-3
 - flame-spread rating of, B 403-2
 - general requirements for, B 403-1
 - limitations on use of, B 403-3, 4
 - use in sprinklered areas, B 403-3d
- Kitchen, domestic
 - definition, B 108-3
 - height, B 206-1a
 - light, B 507-2.1a
 - lighting, B 205-1b, B 209, B 507-2.1a
 - sinks, B 502-6b
 - ventilation, B 508-3.3e, f
- Kitchen, public
 - (see definition of *Accessory use*, B 108-3)
 - enclosure, B 205-1d, e, B 402-4.5a
 - fire protection equipment, B 406-4.2, B 402-4.5a, B 508-3.3c
 - food storage space, B 205-1d
 - lavatory for employees, B 502-6g
 - lighting, B 205-1b, B 209, B 507-2.1a
 - miscellaneous requirements, B 205-1
 - protection of openings in, B 402-4.5a
 - ventilation of, B 209-1f, g, h, B 209-4, B 508-3.3c, B 508-3.3e
 - (see also *Facilities for the physically handicapped*)
- Kitchenette
 - definition, B 108-3
 - lighting, B 205-1c, B 208-1a, B 209-1a, B 507-2.1a
 - ventilation, B 208-1a, B 209-1d, table B 209-5, B 508-3.3e, f
- Ladders
 - live load on, B 304-2.2
 - locations for, B 211-1o, B 211-3.1b
- Laundry equipment, B 502-6a, f
- Leaders and gutters, B 502-5c
- Light
 - artificial, B 209-1, B 212-1k, B 507-2.1
 - emergency, B 507-2.2
 - for exit and directional sign, B 507-2.3d
 - natural, B 209-1a, e, g, h, B 209-2
 - for physically handicapped, B 214-2.1g
- Liquefied petroleum gas
 - (see *Gas piping equipment and systems*)
- Load
 - attic floor, table B 304-2.2
 - on balcony platform, table B 304-2.2
 - below ground level, B 304-8
 - on bumper blocks, B 304-9c
 - combined, B 304-10
 - concentrated live, B 304-2.2, table B 304-2.2
 - dead, B 108-3, B 304-1
 - design, B 108-3, B 304-1
 - during construction or demolition, B 304-12
 - elevator, B 304-11
 - on floors, B 304
 - hydrostatic head, B 304-8
 - impact on floors, partitions, roofs, walls, B 304-9, B 306-5
 - imposed, B 108-3, B 306
 - on ladder, B 304-2.2
 - live, B 108-3, B 304-2
 - performance criteria under test, B 306
 - racking, B 108-3, B 306-6
 - reduction of uniform live, B 304-2.1c, d
 - on retaining walls, B 304-8
 - roof, live, table B 304-2.2
 - roof, minimum imposed, B 304-10c
 - on sidewalks over vaults, table B 304-2.2

Index

- on skylight screens, table B 304-2.2, B 304-2.2
- snow, B 304-3, table B 304-3, B 304-10c, d
- soil pressure, B 304-8
- on stairs, table B 304-2.2
- tests on soil and piles, B 302-2, 3, 4
- transmitted through fastenings and connections, B 304-5
- wind, B 304-4 thru 7, table B 304-4a, b
(see also *Design analysis, structural*)
- Lobby
 - definition, B 108-3
 - display windows in, B 402-4.1c
 - enclosure for, B 211-5c, B 402-4.4a
 - refrigeration equipment located in, B 508-1.2
 - sprinkler system, B 402-4.1b, d
 - vending equipment or stands, B 402-4.1e
- Lodger
 - definition, B 108-3
- Lodging house
 - definition, B 108-3
 - classification by occupancy group, B 202-1
- Lot line
 - definition, B 108-3
 - distance separation, B 401-3.1
 - party wall, B 401-8a
- Louvers
 - in doors, B 211-4.1a
- Luminous ceiling
 - definition, B 108-3
 - materials, B 403-3e
 - sprinklers, B 403-3f, B 510-4.3e
- Machine room
 - access, B 402-4.4k
 - dumbwaiter and elevator, general requirements, B 511-2.2
 - enclosure, B 402-4.4j
 - ventilation, B 508-3.3e
- Maintenance, B 105-4, B 501-b, B 510-2.5, B 511-1d
(see also *Repairs*)
- Marquees, B 213-2
- Materials
 - controlled, B 303-2
 - ordinary, B 303-3
 - protection from deterioration due to surface water or snow, B 307-5
 - protection of exterior, B 307-1, 2, 4
 - quality, B 106
 - requirements, B 309
- Masonry,
 - definition, B 108-3
- Mechanical equipment
 - general requirements, B 501
(see also *Machine room*)
- Mechanical ventilation
(see *Ventilation, mechanical*)
- Mechanized parking structures
 - exits from, B 211-3.1e
- Meter, gas
 - location, B 503-3
 - shutoff valves, B 503-2a
- Meter room (see *Storage and service room*)
- Mezzanine
 - definition, B 108-3 (see also definition of *story*, B 108-3)
 - exits from, B 211-7a
 - floor area, B 203-1j(1)
 - guardrail or parapet, B 205-1f
(see *Parapet and Railing*)
 - height, B 207-1b
- Mixed occupancy
 - buildings of, B 105-3
 - in type 5 construction, B 402-4.1f
 - definition, B 108-3
 - exits from, B 211-1l
 - fire separations in buildings of, B 402-1d, B 402-4.1, table B 402-4
- Motel
 - classification by occupancy group, B 202-1
 - definition, B 108-3
 - fire area, table B 203-1a
including footnote 2
 - kitchen separations in, B 402-4.5b
 - plumbing facilities in, B 502-6c
 - public space ceiling height, B 207-2
- Multiple dwellings
 - definition, B 108-3

Index

- Natural ventilation (see *Ventilation, natural*)
- Noise
(see *Sound transmission loss*)
- Noncombustible
definition, B 108-3
(see also definition of *construction classification*, B 108-3)
- Nonhabitable space, B 208
definition, B 108-3
general requirements, B 205-1
height, B 208-1a
ventilation of, B 209-5
- Nursing home
classification by occupancy group, B 202-1
definition, B 108-3
fire area and height, table B 203-1b, B 203
interior finish in, table B 403-3, B 403-3d
passenger elevator in, B 511-1e
sprinkler system in, B 406-4.1
width of exit, B 211-1i
- Occupancy
classification, B 202-1
definition, B 108-3
mixed, buildings of, B 105-3
(see also *Mixed occupancy*)
physically handicapped, B 214
- Occupied space
definition, B 108-3
general requirement, B 205-1a, b, g, B 207-1, B 211-1e, table B 211-4.1
natural ventilation for, B 209-4
(see also *Habitable space*)
- Offices as accessory use
live loads for, table B 304-2.2
(see also definition of *accessory use*, B 108-3)
- Old-age home
classification, B 202-1, group B2
definition, B 108-3
(see also *Nursing home*)
- Open parking structure (see *Garage*)
as accessory use (see definition of *accessory use*) B 108-3
bumper block for, B 304-9c, d
definition, B 108-3
exits in, B 211-3.1e, B 211-5a, B 212-1d
fire area, B 203-1f, table B 203-1.1b
general requirements, B 212-1d
horizontal impact loads on railings and parapets, B 304-9c
live load for, table B 304-2.2
protection of equipment in, B 501h
physically handicapped, B 214-3
- Opening protective
in basement and cellar stairways, B 211-5f
definition, B 108-3
on display window, B 402-4.1c
enclosure of heater and boiler rooms, B 402-4.6
in exterior wall, B 401-4.1g, B 401-4.2
on exit enclosure, B 402-4.4f, B 402-4.8
fire-resistance rating of, B 401-4.2, B 402-4.8
in fire wall, table B 402-4.8
for kitchens and pantry, B 402-4.5
in lobbies, B 402-4.1
- Openings
air intake and exhaust, B 204-3c, B 401-1b, B 508-3.2
air supply to fuel burning equipment, B 504-2.7b, c
alcove, B 206-1d
between mixed occupancies, B 402-4.1
in chimneys, flues and gasvents, B 505-1f, g, i
distance of chimneys, flues and gasvents from building, table B 505-5
for emergency escape (see *Emergency escape*)
in exterior wall, B 401-4
in exterior walls for fuel oil service piping, B 509-4b
in exterior walls for service piping, B 503-5a, B 503-6e, B 509-4b
facing on legal open space, B 209-1h
in fire wall and fire separations, B 402-4.8
in garage separations, B 402-4.7
for natural light in habitable space, B 209-2b
for natural ventilation in habitable space, B 209-3

Index

- door jamb marking, B 511-5.2
- hall button, requirements for, B 511-5.5
- hall lantern, requirements for, B 511-5.6
- operation and leveling, B 511-5.3 (see also *Elevator*)
- Senior citizens residence, classification by occupancy group, B 202-1
 - fire area and height, table B 203-1a, B 203
- Sewage disposal, B 502-2b, B 502-4
- Sewage drainage system, B 502-4
 - air breaks in drains for, B 502-4k, o
 - air circulation, B 502-4k
 - availability of public sewer for connection of, B 502-2b, c
 - backwater overflow from, B 502-4e
 - cleanouts for, B 502-4j
 - connection to disposal system, B 502-4a
 - design, B 501a, b, c, B 502-1a, B 502-4k
 - fixtures drained to, B 502-4a
 - general requirements, B 501, B 502-1
 - grease waste, B 502-4h
 - indirect connections to, B 502-4p
 - location of vent terminals of, B 502-4l, m, n
 - materials, B 106, B 501b
 - substances to be excluded from, B 502-4f
 - trapping of fixtures connected to, B 502-4i
 - treatment of sewage from, B 502-4d
- Shaft, (see *Hoistway*)
 - definition, B 108-3
 - enclosure, table B 202-2, B 402-4.4
 - opening protectives, B 202-2.1c, B 402-4.8
 - smoke vent in, B 402-4.4h, i
- Shelters, fallout
 - applicability to, B 105-7
 - definition, B 108-3
- Shop, (see *Storage and service rooms*)
- Shower, B 502-6, 7
- Shutoff valve
 - for gas, B 503-2
 - for liquefied petroleum gas, B 503-6h, i
 - for sprinkler installation, B 510-4.5b, B 510-4.7c
- Siamese connection (see *Fire department connection*)
- Sidewalk over vaults
 - live load on, table B 304-2.2
- Siding, grounding requirements for metal, B 507-1i
- Signs
 - for dumbwaiter and elevator, B 511-1c
 - exit and directional, B 507-2.3
 - for incinerators, B 506-2c
 - projecting beyond street line, B 213
 - for standpipe systems, B 510-5.3d
 - for ventilating system, B 508-3.5c
 - wind load on, B 304-4
- Sinks, B 214-7, B 502-6a, b
- Skylight, B 401-6.3
 - loads on screen for, table B 304-2.2
 - in hoistway, shaft, and stairway, B 402-4.4i
- Sleeping room
 - definition, B 108-3
- Slide escapes, B 211-1h
- Sloping site
 - construction requirements, B 203h, i, B 206-2a, B 211-2h
- Smoke-detecting alarm device,
 - single-station
 - alternate requirements, B 406-1c
 - definition, B 108-3
 - general requirements, B 510-8
 - where required, B 211-8(2)d, B 406-6
- Smoke detecting system (see *Fire- and smoke-detecting system*)
- Smoke detector
 - for emergency control, B 211-2a, B 211-4.1b, B 402-4.4c, h, B 510-7, B 511-2.5
 - (see also *Fire- and smoke-detecting system*)

Index

- Smoke pipe connections
 - (see definition of *smoke pipe*, B 108-3)
 - in more than one story, B 505-1g
 - restrictions of flue area in, B 505-1f
 - (see also *Chimney*)
- Smokestack, metal, B 505-1e
 - (see definition of *smokestack*, B 108-3)
 - (see also *Chimney*)
- Smoke stop
 - definition of, B 108-3
 - where required, B 211-2a
- Smoke vent
 - automatic operation of, B 510-7
 - in stairway, shaft or hoistway, B 402-4.4h, i, B 511-2.1e
- Snow
 - load, B 304-3, table 304-3, B 304-10c, d
 - map, B 304-3
- Soil bearing value
 - determination, B 302-1, 2
 - general requirements, B 302-1
 - performance criteria for test of, B 302-3
 - presumptive, B 302-1
- Soil pressure, lateral, B 304-8
- Soffit, projection of, B 211-5e
- Soil borings (see *Borings*)
- Sound transmission loss, B 206-3b
- Spandrel
 - fire-resistance rating for, B 401-3.3b, B 401-3.4b
- Spark arrester
 - general requirements, B 505-4
 - on incinerators, B 506-1e
- Sprinkler system, B 406-4, B 510-4
 - affecting distance of travel to exits, table B 211-6
 - alarm for, B 510-4.5, B 510-4.7e
 - in cellars, B 406-4.1a
 - connection for first-aid hose, B 510-4.8
 - definition, B 108-3
 - domestic water supply from, B 510-4.6
 - fire department connection to, B 510-4.4
 - in garages, B 406-4.1
 - general requirements, B 501, B 510-4.1
 - increase in building height and fire area on basis of, tables B 203-1a, B 203-1.1a, b, B 203-2b, B 406-4 for kitchens and pantry, B 402-4.5
 - locations for, table B 203-1a, footnotes, tables B 203-1.1a, b, B 203-2b, B 211-3.1g, table B 211-6, table B 402-4, B 402-4.1b, d
 - B 402-4.4c, B 402-4.5a, B 403-3d, f, B 406, B 510-4
 - in group B2 occupancy, B 406-4.1a
 - for other than required stairways, B 402-4.4c
 - special installations, B 211-8(2)d, B 402-4.1b, B 402-4.5a, B 406-4.2, B 510-4.7
 - sprinkler heads, B 510-4.3
 - water supply, B 502-3e, f, B 510-4.2
 - water supply tanks for, B 502-9i, j, k
- Stairway
 - capacity, B 211-1i, B 211-3.1g, table B 211-7b
 - connecting to ramp, B 211-2e
 - construction, B 211-3.2, B 211-3.3
 - cumulative width of, B 211-1i
 - definition, B 108-3
 - discharging into common passageway, B 211-3.1m
 - door opening on, B 211-3.1f
 - enclosure, table B 202-2, B 211-1d, B 211-3.1d, e, B 211-3.3b, f, B 211-5, B 211-7b, B 402-4.4
 - as exit, B 211-1d, B 211-3, B 211-7
 - exterior, B 211-3.3
 - firestopping, of stairs, B 402-5.3d
 - general requirements, B 211-3.1
 - guardrail for, B 211-3.1i
 - handrail, B 304-9b
 - handrail for, table B 211-3, B 211-3.1j, B 304-9b
 - headroom, table B 211-3
 - intercommunicating or access, B 210-1d
 - interior, B 211-3.2
 - interior finish in, table B 403-3
 - lighting requirements, B 211-1e, B 507-2.1b
 - live loads for, table B 304-2.2
 - noncombustible, B 211-3.2b
 - opening protectives in enclosures for, B 402-4.8
 - ornamental, B 210-1d
 - platforms and landings in, table B 211-3, B 211-3.1f, k
 - required to roof, B 211-3.1a

Index

- risers, B 210-1e, table B 211-3,
B 211-3.1h, i
- smoke vent in shaft for, B 402-4.4h, i
- sprinklers for, B 402-4.4c
- treads, table B 211-3, B 211-3.1h
- ventilation of, B 508-3.3e
- width of, B 210-1b, d, table B 211-3,
B 211-1i, B 211-3.1e
- winders, B 210-1d, B 211-3.1n
- within a dwelling unit, B 210-1c,
B 402-4.4c
- Standards, generally accepted
(see *Generally accepted standards*)
- Standpipe system
 - for buildings during construction,
B 510-5.1c
 - controls, B 510-5.6
 - definition, B 108-3
 - fire department connection, B 510-5.5
 - general requirements, B 501, B 510-5.1
 - hose stations, B 510-5.3
 - pipng, B 510-5.2
 - where required, B 406-5
 - water supply, B 502-3e, f, B 510-5.4
 - water supply tanks for, B 502-9i, j, k
- Stands, candy and newspaper
(see definition of *accessory use*, B 108-3)
- Storage and service rooms
 - electric meters in, B 507-1g
 - enclosure for, B 402-4.3
 - gas meters in, B 503-3a
 - interior finish, table B 403-3
 - special sprinkler system in, B 406-4.2
 - swimming pool equipment room,
B 502-8b
 - ventilation, B 508-3.3e
(see also definition of *accessory use*,
B 108-3)
- Store, live load for, table B 304-2.2
- Storm drainage system, B 502-5
 - areas to be drained, B 502-5a
 - availability of public sewer, B 502-2c
 - disposal system for, B 502-5a
 - leaders and gutters for, B 502-5c
 - pipng in hoistway, B 501k, B 511-2.1f
(see also *Plumbing systems*)
- Story
 - definition, B 108-3
- Stress
 - allowable, B 303
 - design, B 305a
 - in elevator machine supports, B 304-11
 - increase in, due to wind, B 304-10b
- Structure
 - classification by type of construction,
B 202-2
 - definition, B 108-3
 - general requirements, B 301
 - height and fire area of, B 203
- Structural assembly
 - comparison with approved, B 305c
 - design analysis, B 305a
 - performance criteria under test of, B 306
 - tests for, B 305b, B 306
- Structural damage
 - definition, B 108-3
 - under test, B 306-3
- Structural elements
 - fire-resistance ratings for, table B 202-2,
B 402-1a, B 402-3
 - plastic material, B 404-1f
 - protection, B 301c, B 307
(see also *Materials and Structure*)
- Structural failure
 - of assemblies, B 306-4
 - definition, B 108-3
- Swimming pool
 - equipment room, B 502-8b
 - general requirements, B 502-8a
 - lighting, B 507-2.1a
 - plumbing facilities, B 502-6i
- Tank
 - construction, B 502-9a, b, c, d, e
 - expansion, B 504-2.11
 - location of, B 502-9h
 - pipng, B 502-9f, g
 - for sprinkler or standpipe system,
B 502-9i, j, k
 - supports, B 502-9d, e
 - water supply, B 304-2.1, B 502-9
- Telephones
 - for physically handicapped, B 214-8
- Temporary facilities during construction
 - heating, B 109c
 - lighting, B 507-1h, loads, B 304-12
 - standpipes, B 510-5.1c

Index

- Tenancies, separation between, B 206-3,
B 402-4.2c
- Termites, B 301c, B 308
- Tests
- boring, B 302-2b, c
 - dumbwaiter, elevator and escalator,
B 501e, B 511-1d
 - field loading soil, B 302-3
 - fire alarm system, B 510-2.5
 - fire- and smoke-detecting system,
B 510-3.4
 - of gas piping installation, B 501e
 - imposed loads on assemblies, B 305b,
B 306
 - performance criteria under, B 306
 - pile, B 302-4
 - pit, B 302-2b, c
 - of plumbing systems, B 501e
 - sprinkler system, B 501e
 - standpipe system, B 501e
- Thermal barrier
- definition, B 108-3
 - where required, B 404-2a
- Toilet room
- definition, B 108-3
 - floor and wall of, B 205-1d, e, B 208-2.2,
B 502-7c, d
 - lighting, B 205-1c, B 507-2.1a
 - load, table B 304-2.2
 - located outside dwelling unit, B 502-6c
 - location of, B 208-2
 - location of employee, B 208-2.1
 - mechanical ventilation of, B 508-3.1b,
B 508-3.3e
 - natural ventilation for, B 209-5,
table B 209-5
 - for physically handicapped, B 214-6.7
 - plumbing fixtures, B 502-7d, e
 - temperature requirements in, B 504-1b
- Tower
- cooling, B 508-2
 - wind loads on, table B 304-4a
- Traps (see *Plumbing system*)
- Trim
- exterior, B 401-5
 - interior (see *Interior finish and trim*)
- Trusses
- fire protection, B 402-3b, c
 - fire-resistance ratings, table B 202-2,
B 402-1a, B 402-3
- Ultimate strength, use in design analysis,
B 305a
(see also *Design analysis*)
- Unit heater
- heating of garages, B 504-2.13a
- Uplift force
- due to wind, B 304-7
 - due to hydrostatic head, B 304-7,
B 304-8.1
- Urinal, B 502-6e, i, B 502-7d, e
- for physically handicapped, B 214-7d
- Utilities
- unobstructed during construction,
B 109b
 - unobstructed during demolition, B 110b
 - disconnected during demolition,
B 110c
- Vaults
- live loads on sidewalks over, table
B 304-2.2
(see also *Load*)
- Ventilation, mechanical
- airflow, B 508-3.4
 - air intakes and exhaust openings,
B 508-3.2
 - for bathrooms and toilet rooms,
B 508-3.3e
 - for cooking equipment in public
kitchens, B 508-3.3c, B 508-3.3e
 - for cooking space, B 508-3.3e, f
 - definition, B 108-3
 - for elevator car, B 511-2.4c
 - emergency, B 508-4
 - exhaust systems, B 508-3.1b, B 508-3.2
 - filters for, B 508-3.1g
 - for garages, B 508-3.3e
 - general requirements, B 508-3.1
 - in habitable space, B 508-3.3e
 - plenum chamber for, B 508-3.1c
 - for public assembly, B 508-3.3e,
B 508-3.5b, c
 - of public kitchens, B 508-3.3c,
B 508-3.3e
 - recirculation of exhaust air in,
B 504-2.13b, B 508-3.4
 - for refrigeration machinery room,
B 508-1.6c, B 508-3.3e

Index

- requirements for ducts, B 508-3.1
 - safety controls, B 508-3.5
 - spaces requiring, B 508-3.3
 - for vestibules, B 402-4.7b, B 508-3.1b
- Ventilation, natural
- alcove, B 206-1d
 - courts or yards, B 204
 - definition, B 108-3
 - equipment room occupied during emergency, B 508-4
 - for fuel burning equipment enclosure, B 504-2.7
 - for gas refrigerators, B 503-4
 - for habitable space, B 205-1b, B 209-3,
 - for nonhabitable space, B 209-5, table B 209-5
 - openable areas for, B 209-3, B 209-5, table B 209-5
 - for public space, B 205-1b, B 209-4
 - for smoke vent in shaftway or hoistway, B 402-4.4h, i, B 511-2.1e
 - where used, B 508-3.3e
 - (see also *Heat producing equipment*)
- Vent terminal, B 502-4l, m, n
- Verandas (see *Porches*)
- Vermin, B 102, B 205-1d
- Vestibule
- definition, B 108-3
 - between garage and multiple dwellings, B 402-4.7b, B 508-3.1b, B 508-3.3e
- Walks
- for physically handicapped, B 214-2.2a, b
 - protection if elevated, B 205f
- Wall
- assembly test of, B 306
 - definition, B 108-3
 - exterior protection of, B 307
 - fire-resistance ratings, table B 202-2, B 401-1b, B 401-3.3b, B 401-3.4b, B 401-7b, B 401-8, B 402-1a, e, B 402-2
 - firestopping in, B 402-5
 - impact load on, (see *Load*)
 - opening protectives in, B 401-4, B 402-4.8, (see *Opening protectives*)
 - spandrel, B 108-3, B 401-3.4b
 - wind load on, (see *Load*)
 - (see also *Fire wall, Parapet wall and Party wall*)
- Warm air heating, B 504-2.3, B 504-2.12
- Wash borings (see *Borings*)
- Watchman's system
- definition, B 108-3
 - general requirements, B 510-6
- Water closet
- location of, B 502-7d, e
 - for physically handicapped, table B 214-5.2, B 214-7c
 - as plumbing facilities, B 502-6b, c, d, e, i
 - substitution of urinal for, B 502-6e
- Waterproofing, B 208-2.2, B 301e, B 307-4, B 502-7d
- Water supply system
- availability of public, B 502-2a
 - design of, B 501, B 502-1a, B 502-3b, c, B 502-6a
 - hot, B 502-3d, B 502-6a
 - installation, B 501, B 502-a, B 502-3b, c
 - materials for, B 501b
 - plumbing facilities, B 502-6a
 - source of, B 502-3a
 - for swimming pool, B 502-8b
 - (see also *Sprinkler system and Standpipe system*)
- Wheelchair facilities
- (see *Physically handicapped facilities*)
- Winders, B 210-1d, B 211-3.1n
- Wind loads (see *Load*)
- Window
- display, B 402-4.1c
 - emergency use, B 211-7d
 - exterior walls, B 401-4.1, B 401-4.2
 - for habitable space below curb level, B 206-2b
 - location of top of, B 209-1e
 - for natural light and ventilation, B 209-2, 3, 5
 - opening on court or yard, B 204-1a, B 206-2b, B 209-3a, B 209-4
 - as smoke vent, B 402-4.4i
 - (see also *Door, Glazing, Skylight*)
- Wiring, electrical
- (see *Electrical wiring and equipment*)

Index

Wood, fire retardant
 definition, B 108-3
 where permitted in types 1 and 2
 construction, B 402-1e, B 403-4a
Wood shingles, B 401-6.2b
Yard, B 204
 definition, B 108-3 (see definition of
 Legal open spaces)
 general requirements, B 204-1
 passage from, B 204-1e

 rear, B 204-2a
 side, width of, B 204-2b
 storm drainage of, B 502-5a
 window opening upon, B 204-1a,
 B 206-2b, B 209-3a, B 209-4
Yield strength
 definition of, B 108-3
 in design analysis, B 305-a
Zoning, B 105-5, B 203-1d,
 B 204-1b, B 401-3.2f

AMENDMENTS TO
STATE BUILDING CONSTRUCTION CODE
APPLICABLE TO
MULTIPLE DWELLINGS
EFFECTIVE MARCH 14, 1983

B 108-3
(703.3)

Definitions

hotel. A multiple dwelling used primarily for the purpose of furnishing lodging, with or without meals, to more than fifteen transient guests, for compensation.

lodging house. A multiple dwelling used primarily for the purpose of furnishing lodging, with or without meals, to fifteen or less transient occupants, for compensation.

B 406-1
(750.1)

Alternate Requirements

a— A fire- and smoke-detecting system installed in conformity with section B 510-3, shall be permitted in lieu of a required fire alarm system, or the required special sprinkler installation as set forth in section B 406-4.2a, or in lieu of both.

b— A special sprinkler installation provided in accordance with section B 406-4.2b and installed in conformity with section B 510-4.7e shall be permitted in lieu of a required corridor sprinkler system.

c— Except in hotels, motels, lodging houses and dormitory buildings, a sprinkler system installed in conformity with section B 510-4, shall be permitted in lieu of any of the following: a required fire alarm system; fire- and smoke-detecting system; single station smoke-detecting alarm devices; heat detecting alarm system; and special sprinkler installation.

B 406-2
(750.2)

Fire Alarm System

A fire alarm system installed in conformity with section B 510-2 shall be provided as follows:

Hotels, motels, lodging houses and dormitory buildings
... In buildings three stories or more in height,
or where there are more than thirty sleeping rooms.

Group B1 other than hotels, lodging houses and dormitory buildings ... In buildings more than 250 feet in height.

Group B3... In buildings more than 150 feet in height.

B 406-3
(750.3)

Fire- and Smoke-Detecting System

a —In addition to the requirements set forth in sections B 406-2, B406-4 and B 406-6, a partial fire and smoke detecting system installed in conformity with section B 510-3 and having manual fire alarm boxes in conformity with section B 510-2.2, shall be provided in stairways, corridors, spaces for public or assembly use, basements, cellars, boiler rooms, mechanical equipment rooms and service and storage rooms as follows:

Hotels, Motels, Lodging Houses and Dormitory Buildings.

... In buildings three stories or more in height,
or where there are more than thirty sleeping rooms.

b—A fire- and smoke-detecting system, installed in conformity with section B 510-3, shall be provided as follows:

Group B1... In all community residences.

AMENDMENTS TO
STATE BUILDING CONSTRUCTION CODE
APPLICABLE TO
MULTIPLE DWELLINGS
EFFECTIVE MARCH 14, 1983

B 406-4.1
(750.4a)

Sprinkler Systems

a—A sprinkler system installed in conformity with section 510-4 shall be provided as follows:

Group B1.....Hotels, motels, lodging houses and dormitory buildings:

In buildings 2 stories or less in height---
in assembly and public occupancies and exits
therefrom.

In buildings 3 stories or more in height---
entire building including accessory and mixed
occupancies.

Group B2.....All buildings

Group B3.....In buildings more than six stories in
height.

Groups B1 through B3.....In cellars exceeding 4000
square feet in area except in habitable spaces.

Groups B1 through B3..... In cellar space used for
storage of flammable materials where such space
exceeds 2500 square feet in area

Groups B1 through B3.....In above-grade garages
within a multiple dwelling where the fire area of
the garage exceeds 5000 square feet.

Groups B1 through B3.....In below-grade garages
within a multiple dwelling where the fire area of
the garage exceeds 2500 square feet.

1. In lieu of a sprinkler system, a fire- and smoke-detecting
system connected to a supervised central station and installed in
conformity with section B 510-3 is permitted.

b—A sprinkler system installed in conformity with
section 3 510-4 shall be provided in corridors as follows:

Group B1.....In buildings 4 stories or more in height.

Group B3.....In buildings four to six stories in
height.

B 406-6
(750.6)

Single-Station Smoke-Detecting Alarm Device

At least one single-station smoke-detecting alarm device
installed in conformity with section B 510-8 shall be
located on or near the ceiling and shall be provided in
sleeping rooms for transient occupancy or within dwelling
units adjacent to sleeping spaces as follows:

Group B1.....All buildings.

Group B3.....In buildings 6 stories or less in height.

AMENDMENTS TO
STATE BUILDING CONSTRUCTION CODE
APPLICABLE TO
MULTIPLE DWELLINGS
EFFECTIVE MARCH 14, 1983

B 214
(723)

FACILITIES FOR THE PHYSICALLY HANDICAPPED

B 214-1
(723.1)

General Requirements

a--As set forth in this section, multiple dwellings for permanent and transient occupancy, including accessory public occupancies shall be provided with an exterior accessible route, interior accessible route, usable or adaptable dwelling units, and accessible elements and facilities to make buildings accessible and usable, and establish a safe environment for the physically handicapped.

b--The provisions of this section with respect to the following items shall be supplemental to and take precedence over other less restrictive provisions of this code.

Space allowances and reach range
Accessible route
Walks - maximum slope shall not exceed 1 in 20
(5 percent gradient)
Ramps - maximum slope shall not exceed 1 in 12
(8.3 percent gradient)
Protruding objects
Ground and floor surfaces
Parking and passenger loading zones
Curb ramps
Ramps
Stairs
Elevators
Platform lifts
Doors
Entrances
Drinking fountains and water coolers
Water closets
Urinals
Lavatories and mirrors
Bathtubs
Shower stalls
Toilet rooms
Bathrooms, bathing facilities, and shower rooms
Sinks
Storage
Handrails, grab bars, and tub and shower seats
Controls and operating mechanisms
Alarms
Tactile warnings
Signage
Telephones
Seating tables and work surfaces
Assembly areas
Dwelling units

c--Details, dimensions and construction specifications for items listed in paragraph "b" shall comply with the requirements set forth in the American National Standards Institute standard ANSI A 117.1-1980 "Specifications for Making Buildings and Facilities Accessible to and Usable by Physically Handicapped People."

AMENDMENTS TO
STATE BUILDING CONSTRUCTION CODE
APPLICABLE TO
MULTIPLE DWELLINGS

EFFECTIVE MARCH 14, 1983

B 214-2
(723.2)

Accessibility

- a--Buildings of Group B1 and B3 occupancy classification, with elevators, shall be accessible.
- b--Buildings of Group B1 and B3 occupancy classification, without elevators and having usable or adaptable dwelling units or spaces for use by the physically handicapped, shall be accessible.
- c--Buildings of Group B2 occupancy classification, shall be accessible.
- d--Buildings with adaptable or usable dwelling units or with spaces for use by the physically handicapped shall be provided with an exterior accessible route to permit entry at a principal entrance of the building from the following locations:
 - Public street or sidewalk
 - Driveways
 - Parking area
 - Passenger loading zone
 - Transportation stops
 - Other buildings and facilities on the same premises including but not limited to:
 - Laundry rooms
 - Refuse Disposal locations
 - Mail box areas
 - Recreational and assembly areas
 - Storage rooms
 - Management offices
 - Shops
 - Dining areas
- e--Buildings shall be provided with an interior accessible route from the entrance used by the physically handicapped to usable or adaptable dwelling units and accessible spaces and rooms.
- f--The path of travel in the exterior and interior accessible route shall provide unobstructed access, and applicable items in such path of travel shall comply with the requirements set forth in section B 214-1c.
- g--Where provided, all elevators on an accessible route shall comply with the requirements set forth in section B 214-1c.

B 214-3
(723.3)

Adaptable Dwelling Units

B 214-3.1
(723.3a)

General Requirements

- a--Adaptable dwelling units are units in multiple dwellings of permanent occupancy which are accessible and constructed and equipped so that they can be converted to be used by the physically handicapped with a minimum of structural change.
- b--Such units shall be provided with door widths, clear floor space and provisions for making dwelling unit usable when occupied by physically handicapped.

AMENDMENTS TO
STATE BUILDING CONSTRUCTION CODE
APPLICABLE TO
MULTIPLE DWELLINGS

EFFECTIVE MARCH 14, 1983

c--Interior access, storage, controls, windows, doors, floor surfaces, adaptable kitchens and adaptable bathrooms in these dwelling units shall comply with the requirements set forth in section B 214-1c.

d--Where an adaptable unit occupies two or more stories within itself, accessibility shall only be required at the first story of such dwelling unit.

B 214-3.2
(723.3b)

Number of Adaptable Dwelling Units

The number of adaptable dwelling units shall comply with table B 214-3.2 based on the total number of dwelling units in all residential buildings on the same premises.

Table B 214-3.2 (I-723)
Buildings that require facilities for the
Physically Handicapped

Occupancy Classification	Number of Adaptable Dwelling Units ¹
Group B1-permanent and B3: with elevators	All
without elevators	At least one but not less than 25% of total number of dwelling units

1. Where determination by percent results in a number containing a decimal of .5 or more, use the next higher number.

B 214-3.3
(723.3c)

Adaptable Bathrooms

a--Adaptable bathrooms shall be constructed and equipped in accordance with the requirements set forth in section B 214-1c with respect to the following:

- Door
- Clear floor space
- Floor surface
- Water closet and toilet paper dispenser
- Lavatory and removable base cabinet
- Mirrors
- Medicine cabinet
- Bathtub and controls
- Shower and controls
- Bathtub and shower enclosure
- Reinforced areas for grab bars

b--Adaptable bathrooms shall be capable of being converted so as to be usable by the physically handicapped in accordance with the requirements set forth in section B 214-1c with respect to the following:

- Removal of base cabinet
- Installation of grab bars at water closet, bathtub and shower

AMENDMENTS TO
STATE BUILDING CONSTRUCTION CODE
APPLICABLE TO
MULTIPLE DWELLINGS
EFFECTIVE MARCH 14, 1983

Addition of seat for bathtub and shower
Installation of shower spray with hose
Insulation of exposed knee space hot water piping
under lavatory

B 214-3.4
(723.3d)

Adaptable Kitchen

a--Adaptable kitchens shall be constructed and equipped in accordance with the requirements set forth in section B 214-1c with respect to the following:

Access doorway or opening
Clear floor space
Floor surface
Clearance between opposing base cabinets,
counter tops, appliances and walls
Adjustable or replaceable counter work surfaces
and removable base cabinets
Adjustable or replaceable sink and removable base
cabinet
Storage cabinets, drawers and shelves
Provision for usable range, cooktop, oven,
refrigerator/freezer or dishwasher

b--Adaptable kitchens shall be capable of being converted so as to be usable by the physically handicapped in accordance with the requirements set forth in section B 214-1c with respect to the following:

Removal of base cabinets
Adjustment or replacement of counter work surface
Adjustment or replacement of sink
Installation of usable range, cooktop, oven,
refrigerator/freezer or dishwasher
Insulation of exposed knee space hot water piping
under sink
Insulation of exposed knee space contact surfaces
under oven or cooktop

B 214-3.5
(723.3e)

Washing machines and clothes dryers

Where washing machines and clothes dryers are located within adaptable dwelling units they shall comply with, or be capable of being converted to, the requirements set forth in section B 214-1c.

B 214-3.6
(723.3f)

Emergency Warning Alarms

Emergency warning alarms located within adaptable dwelling unit shall be capable of being converted to audible and visual indication as required, and conform to requirements set forth in section B 214-1c.

B 214-4
(723.4)

Usable Units

B 214-4.1
(723.4a)

General Requirements

a--Usable units are dwelling units, or sleeping rooms in multiple dwellings of transient occupancy, and in nursing and old age homes, which are accessible,

AMENDMENTS TO
STATE BUILDING CONSTRUCTION CODE
APPLICABLE TO
MULTIPLE DWELLINGS
EFFECTIVE MARCH 14, 1983

constructed and equipped so as to be usable by the handicapped.

b--Access, storage, controls, windows, doors, floor surfaces, kitchens and bathrooms, appliances and alarms, in these units shall comply with the requirements set forth in section B 214-1c.

B 214-4.2
(723.4b)

Number of Usable Units

The number of usable units shall comply with table B 214-4.2 based on the total number of units in all the buildings on the same premises.

Table B 214-4.2 (II - 723)
Buildings that require facilities for the
Physically Handicapped

Occupancy classification	Number of Usable Units ¹
Group B1 - transient having 10 or more units	At least one but not less than 5 percent of total number of units ¹
Group B2	All

1. Where determination by percent results in a number containing a decimal of .5 or more use the next higher number.

B 214-5
(723.5)

Parking and Passenger Unloading Zones

a--Parking areas where provided, and parking garages shall comply with table B 214-5.

Table B 214-5 (III - 723)
Buildings that require facilities for the
Physically Handicapped

Occupancy Classification	Number of Accessible parking spaces ¹
Group B1-permanent and B3	At least one for each usable ^{adaptable} unit but not less than 5 percent of total parking spaces provided.
Group B1 - transient	At least one for each usable unit.
Group B2	At least one but not less than 5 percent of total parking spaces provided.

1. Where determination by percent results in a number containing a decimal of .5 or more, use the next higher number.

AMENDMENTS TO
STATE BUILDING CONSTRUCTION CODE
APPLICABLE TO
MULTIPLE DWELLINGS
EFFECTIVE MARCH 14, 1983

b--Location, space size and signage for parking spaces shall comply with provisions set forth in section B 214-1c.

c--Where passenger loading zones are provided, location and access aisle for at least one shall comply with requirements set forth in section B 214-1c.

B 214-6
(723.6)

Common-use Buildings, Spaces and Facilities

B 214-6.1
(723.6a)

Accessory buildings and spaces

a--Accessory buildings and spaces for common use shall be accessible and usable and comply with the requirements set forth in section B 214-1c.

b--Such uses shall include but not be limited to:

Laundry rooms
Refuse disposal locations
Mail box areas
Recreational and assembly areas
Storage rooms
Management office
Shops
Dining areas

B 214-6.2
723.6b)

Assembly areas

a--For assembly areas, minimum number of wheelchair viewing positions shall comply with table B 214-6.2

Table B 214-6.2 (IV - 723)

Capacity of Assembly Area (persons)	Minimum number of accessible wheelchair viewing positions
Up to 50	2
51 to 75	3
76 to 100	4
101 to 150	5
151 to 200	6
201 to 300	7
301 to 400	8
401 to 500	9
501 to 1000	2 percent of total
Over 1000	20 plus 1 for each 100 over 1000

b--Size and placement of wheelchair location, surfaces, access to performing area and listening systems where required shall comply with the provisions of section B 214-1c.

B 214-6.3
(723.6c)

Public Toilet Rooms

Where public toilet rooms are provided, at least one

AMENDMENTS TO
STATE BUILDING CONSTRUCTION CODE
APPLICABLE TO
MULTIPLE DWELLINGS

EFFECTIVE MARCH 14, 1983

toilet room for each sex shall be accessible and usable and comply with requirements set forth in section B 214-1c.

B 214-6.4
(723.6d)

Drinking Fountain

Where public drinking fountains are provided, at least one shall be accessible and usable and comply with the requirements set forth in section B 214-1c.

B 214-6.5
(723.6e)

Public Telephones

At each location where public telephones are provided, at least one telephone shall be accessible and usable by persons in wheelchairs, and persons with hearing impairment, and shall comply with the requirements set forth in section B 214-1c.

B 214-7
(723.7)

Alarms, Warnings and Signage

B 214-7.1
(723.7a)

Alarms

Where emergency warning systems are provided in spaces used by the physically handicapped, they shall include applicable audible and visual alarms that comply with the requirements set forth in section B 214-1c.

B 214-7.2
(723.7b)

Tactile Warnings

Tactile warnings shall be provided at hazardous locations on floors, doors, stairs, hazardous vehicular areas and pools and shall comply with applicable requirements as set forth in section B 214-1c.

B 214-7.3
(723.7c)

Signage

a--Symbols of accessibility shall be provided at the following locations:

Parking spaces designated as reserved for the physically handicapped
Passenger loading zones
Public toilet and bathing facilities
Drinking fountains
Public telephones

b--Informational and directional signage shall be provided where deemed necessary.

c--Symbols and characters shall comply with the applicable requirements set forth in section B 214-1c.

#

AMENDMENTS TO
STATE BUILDING CONSTRUCTION CODE
APPLICABLE TO
MULTIPLE DWELLINGS

Effective April 1, 1981

B 108-3
(703.3)

Definitions

atrium. A vertical opening penetrating through one or more floors to create an open effect within a building.

exterior facing. Material, assembly or trim applied to an exterior wall for decorative treatment, protection or surface insulation and which is not intended to add to the structural stability of the wall.

TABLE B 202-2. (1-711)-MINIMUM FIRE-RESISTANCE
REQUIREMENTS OF STRUCTURAL ELEMENTS
(By types of construction: fire-resistance ratings in hours)

Structural element ⁹	Construction classification ¹
No change	No change

Add footnote 9---For atrium exceptions see Section B215

B 208-2.2
(717.2c)

Waterproofing of Bathroom and Toilet Room Floors

Bathroom, shower room, toilet room and similar space shall have waterproof floors; such waterproofing shall extend at least 4 inches above floors except at doors, so that floors can be flushed or washed without leaking.

B 209-2
(718.2)

Natural Light for Habitable Space

b---Each habitable space shall be provided with natural light by means of openings described in this section, in an amount equivalent to that transmitted through clear glass equal in area to not less than 8 per cent of the floor area of the habitable space.

c---Delete

B 209-3
(718.3)

Natural Ventilation for Habitable Space

b---Each habitable space shall be provided with natural ventilation through openable parts of the opening described in this section which are equal in area to not less than 4 per cent of the total floor area of each habitable space.

c---Delete

AMENDMENTS TO
STATE BUILDING CONSTRUCTION CODE
APPLICABLE TO
MULTIPLE DWELLINGS

Effective April 1, 1981

B 214-1
(723.1)

General Requirements

b---Buildings set forth in table B 214-1a shall be equipped with facilities to provide access and a safe environment for the physically handicapped. Cumulative gross floor area shall be the sum of the gross areas of all floor levels of one or more buildings of the same occupancy on the same premises. For accessibility and usability, the dimensions and construction specifications set forth in the American National Standards Institute (ANSI) Standard A117.1-1980, "Specifications for Making Buildings and Facilities Accessible to and Usable by the Physically Handicapped People," shall be deemed acceptable as being in compliance with the Code.

B 214-2.2
(723.2b)

Walks

a---Walks shall have a width of at least 36 inches.

B 214-2.3
(723.2c)

Ramps

c---At each end of a ramp and at a door opening upon a ramp, there shall be a level landing at least 5 feet long.

d---Intermediate level landings at least 5 feet long shall be provided so that the sloping portion of the ramp between landings shall have a length not exceeding 30 feet.

e---A level landing, with a minimum linear dimension of 5 feet, shall be provided wherever a sharp change in direction occurs in a ramp.

B 214-3
(723.3)

Parking Spaces

b---Parking spaces shall be at least 8 feet wide, with a 5 foot access aisle.

B 214-5.5
(723.5e)

Electrical Equipment

a---Receptacles shall be located at least 15 inches above the floor.

AMENDMENTS TO
STATE BUILDING CONSTRUCTION CODE
APPLICABLE TO
MULTIPLE DWELLINGS

Effective April 1, 1981

B 214-7
(723.7)

Usability of Plumbing Fixtures

d---Where provided for the physically handicapped, urinals shall be installed so that rim levels are no more than 17 inches above floor level; floor-set stall urinals shall be installed so that rim level is no higher than the toilet room floor level.

e---Lavatories and kitchen sinks for the physically handicapped shall have at least 27 inches clearance between fixture bottom and floor for a depth of 17 inches so as to provide sufficient leg room, and the piping beneath the fixture shall be located or insulated so as to prevent injury to persons in wheel-chairs.

h---Drinking fountains for the physically handicapped shall have spout height no higher than 36 inches above the floor. Units shall project at least 17 inches from the wall or cabinet on which they are mounted. Such drinking fountains shall have up-front jets and controls and shall be designed for hand operation.

B 215
(724)

ATRIUMS

B 215-1
(724.1)

General Requirements

A building having an atrium which penetrates one or more floors shall be of type 1 or 2 construction.

B 215-2
(724.2)

Enclosure

a---The atrium shall be separated from adjacent spaces by an enclosure having a fire resistance rating of at least 2 hours.

b---Openings in the separation shall be provided with opening protectives having a fire resistance rating of at least 1½ hours or shall be protected by sprinkler heads spaced not more than 6 feet apart.

c---Windows and glazed panels in the separation shall be protected on the occupied side by sprinkler heads spaced not more than 6 feet apart.

d---Glass walls shall be permitted in lieu of the 2-hour fire-rated separation provided that sprinkler heads spaced not more than 6 feet apart are installed on the occupied side.

e---The structural elements of the roof construction over the atrium shall be of noncombustible material and shall be permitted to have no fire resistance rating provided the lowest portion of such construction is at least 20 feet above the atrium floor.

AMENDMENTS TO
STATE BUILDING CONSTRUCTION CODE
APPLICABLE TO
MULTIPLE DWELLINGS

Effective April 1, 1981

B 215-3
(724.3)

Exits

a---An unenclosed path of travel within the atrium to a required exit shall be permitted provided that, except at the lowest level, such path of travel shall be sprinklered.

b---Direct egress from the atrium to a required exit stairway shall not be permitted. Access to such stairways shall be through an enclosed corridor or vestibule conforming to the requirements for exits.

B 215-4
(724.4)

Smoke Venting

a---The atrium shall be provided with smoke vents which exhaust directly to the exterior. Such smoke vents shall be automatically activated by smoke detectors installed within the atrium, by the operation of other automatic fire protection equipment, and by the interruption of electrical power.

b---In lieu of smoke vents mechanical means shall be permitted for venting smoke from the atrium. Such mechanical means shall be the building recirculated air system designed and installed to operate without recirculation so as to exhaust smoke to the exterior, or in lieu thereof, shall be an independent automatic mechanical smoke removal system.

TABLE B 401-3.2. (1-745)-MINIMUM DISTANCE SEPARATIONS
In feet

Fire limits	Height in stories	Noncombustible walls ¹ with fire-resistance ratings of-	Combustible walls with noncombustible exterior facings giving protection of-	Combustible walls with combustible exterior facings
-------------	-------------------	--	--	---

No change

Add footnote 1---For noncombustible walls with combustible exterior facing see Section B 401-9.

AMENDMENTS TO
STATE BUILDING CONSTRUCTION CODE
APPLICABLE TO
MULTIPLE DWELLINGS

Effective April 1, 1981

B 401-5
(745.5)

Eaves and Cornices

- a---No change
- b---No change
- c---No change
- d---Delete

B 401-9
(745.9)

Combustible Facing on Noncombustible Exterior Walls

a---A building classified as low or moderate hazard, located inside or outside fire limits, is permitted to have combustible exterior facing on a masonry exterior wall without affecting the construction classification of the building or reducing the fire resistance rating of the wall provided the installation is as follows:

Surface flame spread rating of combustible facing	Maximum allowable height of building	Maximum allowable area of combustible facing
0 to 10	Unlimited	Unlimited
11 to 25	2 Stories	Unlimited
Over 25	2 Stories	10 per cent of the area of the wall on which the facing is mounted

b---Concealed spaces between the combustible exterior facing and the masonry wall shall be filled with noncombustible material or firestopped so that no dimension exceeds 8 feet vertically or 20 feet horizontally. Firestopping shall be of material having a flame-spread rating at least equivalent to the flame-spread rating of the facing.

c---Where combustible exterior facing has a total area exceeding 10 per cent of the area of the wall on which it is mounted, the distance between such facing and another building or interior lot line shall be not less than 15 feet.

B 405-4
(749.4)

Combustion Air Supply

An air intake with damper, as required by the State Energy Conservation Construction Code to provide a source of outside air of sufficient quantity to support combustion in the fireplace, shall be constructed of noncombustible material and shall be installed in a manner that will prevent the backflow of fire and products of combustion through such intake.

AMENDMENTS TO
STATE BUILDING CONSTRUCTION CODE
APPLICABLE TO
ONE AND TWO FAMILY DWELLINGS

Effective April 1, 1981

B 406-3
(750.3)

Fire-and Smoke-Detecting System

a---In addition to the requirements set forth in sections B 406-2 and B 406-6, a partial fire-and smoke detecting system, installed in conformity with section B 510-3 and having manual fire alarm boxes in conformity with section B 510-2.2, shall be provided in stairways, corridors, lobbies, spaces for public or assembly occupancy or use, basements, cellars, boiler rooms, mechanical equipment rooms and service and storage rooms as follows:

Hotels, lodging houses, and dormitory buildings

...In buildings 3 stories in height, or where there are more than 30 sleeping rooms.

b---A fire-and smoke-detecting system, installed in conformity with section B 510-3, shall be provided as follows:

Group B1...In all community residences.

Hotels, lodging houses, and dormitory buildings

...In buildings of type 1 or 2a construction, more than 3 stories in height and having 75 or more sleeping rooms.

...In buildings of type 2b, 3 and 4 construction, more than 3 stories in height and containing 50 or more sleeping rooms.

B 502-7
(756.7)

Plumbing Fixtures

d---Water closets, urinals, showers, and bathtubs shall be located only in toilet rooms or bathrooms provided with waterproof floors.

TABLE B 507.(1-761)-LOCATIONS WHERE EMERGENCY LIGHTING IS REQUIRED

Occupancy	Location	Buildings or Spaces
B1 - permanent	Exits	All ¹
B1 - transient	Exits	All ¹
B2	Exits	All ¹
B3	Exits	All ¹
All	Accessory assembly space more than 99 persons	All
All	Passenger elevators	All

1---Except in buildings in which the exit from each dwelling unit or sleeping room is directly to the exterior.